

☒ Description	: paged 1 to paged 93
☒ Claim(s)	: paged 94 to paged 105
☒ Drawing(s)	: paged 114 to paged 114
☒ Abstract	: paged 106 to paged 106

- 1 -

1 **Electrostatic Image Developing Toner and
Fixing Method**

9606857-2
IPO's copy

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

5 **Field of the invention**

The present invention relates to a toner for developing an electrostatic image, used in an image forming process such as electrophotography, electrostatic recording or magnetic recording, and a
10 method of fixing the toner.

Related Background Art

A number of methods as disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 2,297,691, Japanese Patent Publication Nos. 42-23910 and No. 43-24748 and so forth are
15 conventionally known as electrophotography. In general, copies are obtained by forming an electrostatic latent image on a photosensitive member by utilizing a photoconductive material, subsequently developing the latent image by the use of a toner, and
20 transferring the toner image to a transfer medium such as paper if necessary, followed by fixing by the action of heat, pressure, heat-and-pressure, or solvent vapor. The toner that has not transferred to and has remained on the photosensitive member is
25 cleaned by various means, and then the above process is repeated.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 In recent years, such a copying apparatus is
not only used as a copying machine for office work to
take copies of originals as commonly done, but also
has began to be used in the field of printers serving
5 as outputs of computers and in the field of personal
copying of private use.

 Under such circumstances, the apparatus are
severely sought to be made small-sized, lightweight
and highly reliable. Copying machines have now been
10 formed of more simple components in various respects.
As a result, a high performance has become required
for toners, and copying machines are no longer
considered excellent unless an improvement in the
performance of toners is achieved.

15 For example, various method or devices have
been developed in relation to the step of fixing a
toner image to a sheet such as paper. A method most
commonly available at present is the pressure heat
system using a heat roller.

20 The pressure heat system using a heat roller
is a method of carrying out fixing by causing a toner
image surface of an image-receiving sheet to pass the
surface of a heat roller whose surface is formed of a
material having releasability to toner while the
25 former is brought into contact with the latter under
application of a pressure. Since in this method the



1 surface of the heat roller comes into contact with the
toner image of the image-receiving sheet under
application of a pressure, a very good thermal
efficiency can be achieved when the toner image is
5 melt-adhered onto the image-receiving sheet, so that
fixing can be carried out rapidly. Thus, this method
is very effective in a high-speed electrophotographic
copying machines. In this method, however, since the
surface of the heat roller comes into contact with the
10 toner image under application of a pressure, part of
the toner image may sometimes adhere and transfer to
the surface of the fixing roller, which is re-
transferred to the subsequent image-receiving sheet to
cause an offset phenomenon, resulting in a
15 contamination of the image-receiving sheet. Thus, it
is considered to be one of essential conditions in the
heat roller fixing system that no toner is adhered to
the surface of the heat fixing roller.

For the purpose of not causing the toner to
20 adhere to the surface of a fixing roller, a measure
has been hitherto taken such that the roller surface
is formed of a material such as silicon rubber or a
fluorine resin, having an excellent releasability to
toner, and, in order to prevent offset and to prevent
25 fatigue of the roller surface, its surface is further
covered with a thin film formed using a fluid having a



1 good releasability as exemplified by silicone oil.
However, this method, though effective in view of the
prevention of the offset of toner, requires a device
for feeding an anti-offset fluid, and hence has the
5 problem that the fixing device becomes complicated.

This is in the opposite direction to the
demand for small size and light weight. In some
instances, the silicone oil is evaporated by heat to
contaminate the interior of the machine. Now, based
10 on the idea that the fluid for preventing offset
should be fed from the the inside of a toner without
use of any apparatus for feeding silicone oil, a
method has been proposed in which a release agent such
as a low-molecular polyethylene or a low-molecular
15 polypropylene is added in the toner. Addition of such
a release agent in a large quantity in order to attain
a sufficient effect may cause filming to the
photosensitive member or result in a contamination of
the surface of a toner carrying member such as a
20 carrier or a sleeve, so that toner images may be
deteriorated to bring about a problem in practical
use. Thus the release agent is added in the toner in
such a small amount that may not cause the
deterioration of toner images, where a releasing oil
25 is fed in a little amount and a device by which the
toner that may cause offset is cleaned using a member



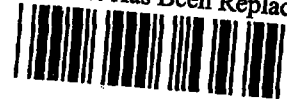
1 such as a web of a wind-up type is used together.

However, taking account of the recent demand for small size, light weight and high reliability, it is necessary and preferred to remove such a
5 supplementary device. Accordingly, no countermeasure can be completely taken unless the fixing performance and anti-offset of the toner are further improved. It is difficult to achieve the improvement unless binder resins for toners are further improved.

10 As a technique concerning the improvement of binder resins of toners, Japanese Patent Publication No. 51-23364, for example, proposes a toner in which a cross-linked polymer is used as a binder resin.

According to the method disclosed therein, the toner
15 is effective for the improvement in anti-offset and wind-around resistance, but on the other hand an increase in the degree of cross-linking results in an increase in the fixing temperature. Hence it is difficult to obtain a toner having a sufficiently low
20 fixing temperature, a superiority in anti-offset and wind-around resistance, and a sufficient fixing performance. In general, in order to improve the fixing performance, the binder resin must be made to have a low molecular weight to lower its softening
25 point. This conflicts with the measure for the improvement of anti-offset. Since the binder resin is



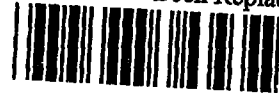


1 made to have a low softening point, the glass
transition point of the resin is necessarily lowered
to bring about an undesirable phenomenon that blocking
of toner occurs during storage.

5 To cope with this problem, Japanese Patent
Application Laid-open No. 55-158340 proposes a toner
containing a binder resin comprised of a low-molecular
weight polymer and a high-molecular weight polymer.
This binder resin can achieve an improvement in
10 respect of fixing performance, but can not still be
satisfactory in respect of anti-offset. It is
difficult for this toner to highly satisfy the anti-
offset and fixing performance.

Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 58-
15 203453 proposes a toner containing a binder resin
comprised of a low-temperature softening resin and a
high-temperature softening resin. This binder resin
can achieve an improvement in respect of fixing
performance, but can not still be satisfactory in
20 respect of anti-offset. It is difficult for this toner
to highly satisfy the anti-offset and fixing
performance.

Japanese Patent Publication No. 60-20411
proposes a process for producing a resin composition
25 comprising a polymer with a low degree of
polymerization and a polymer with a high degree of



1 polymerization. When this resin is used as a binder
resin for a toner, the resin tends to achieve an
improvement in respect of fixing performance, but can
not still be satisfactory in respect of anti-offset.

5 Thus there is much room for improvement.

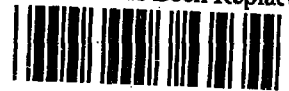
In relation to a toner containing a binder
resin comprised of a blend of a low-molecular weight
polymer and a cross-linked polymer, Japanese Patent
Application Laid-open No. 58-86558, for example,
10 proposes a toner comprising a low-molecular weight
polymer and an insoluble infusible high-molecular
weight polymer as main resin components. According to
the method disclosed therein, the fixing performance
and grindability tend to be improved. However, it is
15 difficult to satisfy in a high performance both the
anti-offset and the grindability, because the weight
average molecular weight/number average molecular
weight (M_w/M_n) of the low-molecular weight polymer is
as small as not more than 3.5 and the content of the
20 insoluble infusible high-molecular weight polymer is
as large as from 40 to 90 wt.%. Thus, it is very
difficult from a practical viewpoint to give a toner
well satisfying the fixing performance (in particular,
in high-speed fixing), the offset resistance and the
25 grindability unless a fixing assembly is provided with
a device for feeding an anti-offset fluid. Moreover,



1 the toner must be heat-kneaded at a temperature far
higher than that in usual instances or heat-kneaded at
a high shear, because the insoluble infusible high-
molecular weight polymer used in a larger amount turns
5 to have a very high melt viscosity as a result of the
heat-kneading carried out when the toner is prepared.
As a result, in the instance where it is kneaded at a
high temperature, the toner characteristics may be
lowered because of thermal decomposition of other
10 additives. In the instance where it is kneaded at a
high shear, the molecules of the binder resin may be
excessively cut. Thus, there is the problem that the
desired anti-offset can be achieved with difficulty.

Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 60-
15 166958 proposes a toner comprising a resin composition
obtained by polymerizing monomers in the presence of a
low-molecular poly(α -methylstyrene) having a number
average molecular weight (M_n) of from 500 to 1,500.

In particular, this publication discloses that
20 the number average molecular weight (M_n) may
preferably be in the range of from 9,000 to 30,000.
With an increase in M_n for the purpose of improving
anti-offset, the fixing performance of the toner and
the grindability at the time the toner is prepared may
25 become more questionable from a practical viewpoint.
Hence it is difficult to satisfy in a high performance



1 both the anti-offset and the grindability. Thus, the
toner having a poor grindability at the time the toner
is prepared brings about a lowering of production
efficiency, and also coarse toner particles tend to be
5 included into the toner, undesirably resulting in
black spots around a toner image.

Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 56-
16144 proposes a toner containing a binder resin
component having at least one maximum value in each
10 region of a molecular weight of from 10^3 to 8×10^4
and a molecular weight of from 10^5 to 2×10^6 , in the
molecular weight distribution measured by gel
permeation chromatography (GPC). The toner, however,
is sought to be further improved in fixing performance
15 and anti-offset.

Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 63-
223662 proposes a toner comprising a binder resin i)
containing 10 to 60 wt.% of a THF(tetrahydrofuran)-
insoluble matter, based on the binder resin, ii)
20 having a weight average molecular weight/number
average molecular weight (Mw/Mn) of ≥ 5 , a peak in the
region of a molecular weight of from 2,000 to 10,000
and a peak or shoulder in the region of a molecular
weight of from 15,000 to 100,000, in the molecular
25 weight distribution measured by GPC of a THF-soluble
matter, and iii) containing a component with a



- 10 -

1. molecular weight of not more than 10,000 in an amount
of from 10 to 50 % by weight in the binder resin. In
this instance, the resin can bring about a superiority
in the grindability, fixing performance, filming or
5 melt-adhesion resistance to a photosensitive member,
image forming performance, and anti-offset (in
particular, anti-offset at the high-temperature side),
but is sought to achieve a further improvement in the
anti-offset and fixing performance of the toner. In
10 particular, it is difficult for this resin to cope
with the severe condition that both the fixing
performance at a low temperature and the anti-offset
at a high temperature are required to be
simultaneously satisfied.

15 In addition, it is very difficult to achieve
both the properties concerned with fixing and the
grindability at a high performance. In particular,
the grindability required when toners are prepared is
an important factor for the recent trend in which
20 toners are made to have a smaller particle diameter on
account of the demand for a higher quality level,
higher resolution and higher fine-line reproduction of
copied images, and the improvement in the grindability
is very important from the viewpoint of energy since a
25 very large energy is required in the step of grinding.

The phenomenon that toner is melt-adhered to



1 the inner wall of a grinding apparatus tends to occur
in a toner having a good fixing performance, therefore
bringing about a poor grinding efficiency. In the
process of copying, there is the step of cleaning the
5 toner having remained on a photosensitive member after
transfer. Nowadays, from the viewpoint of making
apparatus small-sized, light weight and highly
reliable, it has become common to carry out cleaning
by the use of a blade (i.e., blade cleaning). As
10 photosensitive members have a longer lifetime,
photosensitive member drums are made small-sized and
systems are made high-speed, the melt-adhesion
resistance and filming resistance to photosensitive
members have been more strictly required in toners.
15 In particular, amorphous silicon photosensitive
members having been recently put into practical use
are very highly durable, and also organic
photoconductive photosensitive members (OPCs) have
longer lifetimes. Hence, the performances required in
20 toners have become higher.

In order to make apparatus small-sized,
components must be so designed as to be successfully
assembled. This makes small the space through which
the air flows. In addition, heat sources for a fixing
25 assembly and an exposure system come very near to a
toner hopper or a cleaner. As a result, toner is

1 exposed to a high-temperature atmosphere. Hence, no
toner can any longer be put into practical use unless
it has a better blocking resistance.

For example, the performances required in
5 toners conflict with each other in almost all
properties, as in fixing performance and blocking
resistance, and yet it is increasingly sought and
studied to satisfy all of them in a high performance.
No satisfactory results, however, have been obtained.

10 As previously stated, as a method of fixing a
visible image of toner to a recording medium, the heat-
roll fixing system is widely used, in which a
recording medium retaining thereon a toner visible
image having not been fixed is heated while it is held
15 and carried between a heat roller maintained at a
given temperature and a pressure roller having an
elastic layer and coming into pressure contact with
the heat roller.

The heat-roll fixing, however, has the
20 following problems that should be settled.

- (1) A waiting time (a time during which an image-
forming operation is prohibited) is required until the
heating roller reaches the given temperature.
- (2) The heating roller must be maintained at a
25 proper temperature in order to prevent poor fixing
caused by the variations of heat-roller temperatures

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 that may occur when the recording medium is passed or
because of other external factors, and also to prevent
the phenomenon of offset of toner on the heating
roller. This makes it necessary to make large the
5 heat capacity of the heating roller or a heater
element, which requires a large electric power.

(3) After the recording medium has been passed
over the heating roller and discharged, the recording
medium and the toner on the recording medium are
10 slowly cooled because of a high temperature of the
heating roller and also because of the atmospheric
temperature having become higher, resulting in a state
in which a high adhesion of the toner is maintained.
Thus, there may often occur offset, or paper jam
15 caused by the winding of the recording medium around
the roller.

It is earnestly sought to realize a fixing
method that has solved such problems, and may require
only a short waiting time and a low consumption of
20 electric power while achieving excellent performance
of fixing a toner latent image to a recording medium
and excellent anti-offset. Such a fixing method
greatly depends on toner properties, and one of the
important properties is the low-temperature fixing
25 performance of toner.

As means for preventing occurrence of the

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 offset phenomenon, the following methods are known as
previously stated: (i) The method in which the fixing
is carried out while applying a release agent such as
silicone oil to the surface of a heating roller, (ii)
5 the method in which a high-molecular weight polymer is
used as a binder resin for toner, and (iii) the method
in which a wax having release properties is
incorporated in a toner.

In the method (i), however, the oil is heated
10 to generate a smell, and also a device for feeding the
oil becomes necessary to bring about the problem that
the fixing device becomes complicated in structure.

In the method (ii), although the anti-offset
of the toner can be improved, it is difficult to
15 achieve the low-temperature fixing because of a
concurrent rise of the melting temperature of the
toner.

In respect of the method (iii), Japanese
Patent Publications No. 52-3304, No. 52-3305, No. 57-
20 52574, No. 53-155655 and No. 58-12580, for example,
disclose toners comprising a styrene resin and a
specific release agent.

Under existing circumstances, however, these
toners can achieve an improvement particularly in
25 regard to the high-temperature side offset phenomenon,
but little improvement in respect of the low-temperature

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 fixing performance. When such a release
agent is used in a binder having a low-temperature
melting properties, it is difficult for the release
agent to have the releasing effect at a low
5 temperature, tending to cause a low-temperature offset
phenomenon. This causes a lowering of fixing
performance, resulting in no achievement of low-
temperature fixing performance.

To prevent the high-temperature side offset
10 phenomenon, methods are known in which a high-
molecular weight polymer is incorporated in a binder
resin. The methods are disclosed, for example, in
Japanese Patent Applications Laid-open No. 50-134652,
No. 54-114245, No. 56-16144, No. 56-158340 and No. 58-
15 203453.

Most of the toners used in these methods have
achieved an improvement in the high-temperature side
offset phenomenon, but are sought to be further
improved in respect of the low-temperature fixing
20 performance. On the other hand, the low-temperature
fixing performance have been achieved to a certain
extent in some of these methods. A further
improvement, however, is sought in respect of
development performance and blocking resistance.

25 SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

An object of the present invention is to

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 provide a toner that has solved the above problems.

Another object of the present invention is to provide a toner that can be fixed at a low temperature and also has anti-offset in a broad temperature region of from low temperatures to high temperatures.

Still another object of the present invention is to provide a toner that may cause no melt-adhesion and filming to a photosensitive member in a high-speed system even after use for a long period of time.

10 A further object of the present invention is to provide a toner that has a superior blocking resistance and particularly can be well used even in a high-temperature atmosphere in a small-sized machine.

A still further object of the present invention is to provide a toner that can be continuously produced in a good efficiency because of no melt-adhesion of a ground product to the inner wall of an apparatus in the course of grinding.

According to the present invention, there is provided a toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprising a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight



- 1 average molecular weight/number average molecular
weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in
the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to
20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a
5 molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a
molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a
molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided
that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a
molecular weight distribution curve area ratio
10 SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area
of a molecular weight distribution curve of a
molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented
by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution
curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to
15 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by
a straight line connecting the apex A (apexA)
corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the
apex B (apexB) corresponding to the molecular weight
peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by
20 Sd.

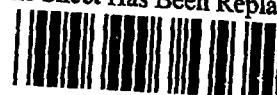
According to another aspect of the present
invention, there is provided a heat fixing method
comprising;

- imparting a toner image onto a recording
25 medium, wherein a toner that forms said toner image
comprises a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said



1 binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an
amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin,
and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by
GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble
5 matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number
average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular
weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of
from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in
the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to
10 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region
of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000,
provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150,
and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio
SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area
15 of a molecular weight distribution curve of a
molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented
by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution
curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to
5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by
20 a straight line connecting the apex A (apexA)
corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the
apex B (apexB) corresponding to the molecular weight
peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by
Sd; and
25 heat-fixing said toner image to said recording
medium by means of a heater element stationarily

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 supported and a pressure member that stands opposite
to said heat element in pressure contact and brings
said recording medium into close contact with said
heater element through a film interposed between them.

5

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is a schematic illustration of an
example of a fixing device used for carrying out the
fixing method of the present invention.

10

Fig. 2 illustrates a molecular weight
distribution curve obtained by GPC.

Fig. 3 is a schematic illustration of an
overhead-type flow tester.

15

Fig. 4 shows a flow tester flow-out curve (a
plunger fall quantity-temperature curve).

Fig. 5 illustrates a DSC curve for determining
T_g using a DSC (differential scanning calorimeter).

DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

20

The present inventors made intensive studies
in order to achieve the objects stated above. As a
result, they have discovered that the objects can be
achieved when the binder resin contains a THF-
insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% and
25 also has a specific constitution in respect of the
molecular weight distribution measured by GPC of a



1 THF-soluble matter.

They have also discovered that the effect of the present invention becomes remarkable when the toner contains a release agent having a specific
5 molecular weight and molecular weight distribution and also has a specific melting point.

They have further discovered that the objects can be better achieved particularly when the binder resin is prepared by mixing a low-molecular weight
10 polymer and a high-molecular weight polymer in a solvent and thereafter removing the solvent.

In regard to the heat-fixing of a toner visible image to a recording medium, they have discovered that the toner is suitable for, besides
15 conventional heat roll fixing devices, a heat fixing system wherein a toner visible image is heat-fixed to a recording medium by means of a heater element stationarily supported and a pressure member that stands opposite to said heater element in pressure
20 contact and brings said recording medium into close contact with said heater element through a film interposed between them.

The binder resin that constitutes the above toner contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of
25 less than 10 wt.%, and preferably not less than 5 wt.%, based on the binder resin. A THF-insoluble



1 matter contained in an amount more than 10 wt.% can
contribute an improvement in anti-offset but tends to
result in a lowering of fixing performance, making it
difficult to highly satisfy the both.

5 The binder resin, when its THF-soluble matter
is measured by GPC, may preferably have a weight
average molecular weight/number average molecular
weight ($\overline{M}_w/\overline{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in
the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to
10 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a
molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a
molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a
molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided
that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a
15 molecular weight distribution curve area ratio
SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area
of a molecular weight distribution curve of a
molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented
by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution
20 curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to
5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by
a straight line connecting the apex corresponding to
the molecular weight peak MA and the apex
corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a
25 molecular weight distribution curve by Sd. It is
difficult to achieve the objects of the present



1 invention if the above conditions are not satisfied.

Fig. 2 shows the results from a GPC chromatogram.

The average molecular weight/number average
molecular weight ($\overline{M}_w/\overline{M}_n$) should be not less than 18,
5 preferably not less than 20, and more preferably in
the range of from 25 to 60. If the $\overline{M}_w/\overline{M}_n$ is less than
18, the fixing performance tends to be improved but
the anti-offset is lowered.

The binder resin has one molecular weight peak
10 and another molecular weight peak (MB and MA) in the
region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000
and in the region of a molecular weight of from
380,000 to 1,000,000, respectively, and a molecular
weight minimum in the region of a molecular weight of
15 from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the
range of from 30 to 150. In a preferred embodiment,
the binder resin has one molecular weight peak and
another molecular weight peak in the region of a
molecular weight of from 5,000 to 15,000 and in the
20 region of a molecular weight of from 450,000 to
900,000, respectively, and a molecular weight minimum
in the region of a molecular weight of from 30,000 to
300,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from
40 to 100. If it has the molecular weight minimum
25 only in the region of the molecular weight of from
20,000 to 380,000, the fixing performance can be

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 1 improved but the anti-offset becomes clearly poor. If
the molecular weight peak MA is less than 3,000, the
blocking resistance becomes poor to tend to cause
filming or melt-adhesion to a photosensitive member.
- 5 On the other hand, if the MA is more than 20,000, the
fixing performance may become poor. If the molecular
weight peak MB is less than 380,000, the anti-offset
becomes poor to tend to bring about a melt-adhered
product in a device in the course of grinding. If it
- 10 is more than 1,000,000, the fixing performance may
become poor, and also the grindability tends to become
poor, resulting in a lowering of productivity.

The molecular weight peak ratio MB/MA should
be in the range of from 30 to 150, preferably from 30

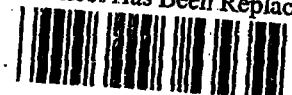
15 to 120, and more preferably from 40 to 100.

If the MB/MA is less than 30 or more than 150,
it becomes difficult to highly satisfy both the fixing
performance and anti-offset.

In the case when two or more molecular weight

20 peaks are present in the region of the molecular
weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, the molecular weight
corresponding to the position of a higher or highest
peak among the peaks in the GPC chromatogram is
regarded as the MA.

25 Similarly, in the case when two or more
molecular weight peaks are present in the region of



1 the molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, the
molecular weight corresponding to the position of a
higher or highest peak among the peaks in the GPC
chromatogram is regarded as the MB.

5 In the case when two or more molecular weight
minimums are present in the region of the molecular
weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, the molecular weight
corresponding to the position of a lower or lowest
minimum among the molecular weight minimums in the GPC
10 chromatogram is regarded as the Md.

The molecular weight distribution curve area
ratio SA:SB:Sd should be 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8,
preferably 1 : 0.3 to 0.7 : 0.4 to 0.7, and more
preferably 1 : 0.3 to 0.6 : 0.5 to 0.7. If the SB is
15 less than 0.3, the anti-offset tends to be lowered,
and if it is more than 0.8, the fixing performance and
also the grindability tend to become poor. If the Sd
is less than 0.35, the fixing performance and/or the
anti-offset tend to be lowered, and if it is more than
20 0.8, the anti-offset tends to become poor.

The release agent preferably used in the toner
of the present invention may preferably have a number
average molecular weight of not more than 1,000, a
weight average molecular weight of not more than
25 2,500, a weight average molecular weight/number
average molecular weight ($\overline{M}_w/\overline{M}_n$) of not more than 3.



1 and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C. In a
preferred embodiment, the toner contains a release
agent in an amount of from 0.1 wt.% to 20 wt.% based
on the binder resin. In a more preferred embodiment,
5 the release agent has a number average molecular
weight of from 400 to 700, a weight average molecular
weight of from 500 to 1,500, an $\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$ of not more than
2.5 and a melting point of from 60°C to 100°C. The
release agent may more preferably be contained in an
10 amount of from 1 wt.% to 10 wt.% based on the binder
resin.

If the release agent used in the toner of the
present invention does not satisfy the above
conditions, e.g., if the melting point is higher than
15 120°C, the fixing performance is adversely affected,
and if it is lower than 60°C, the anti-offset and the
blocking resistance of the toner are adversely
affected. If the release agent is contained in an
amount more than 20 wt.%, the blocking resistance and
20 fixing performance tend to be adversely affected when
the toner is left in a high-temperature environment,
and if it is less than 0.1 wt.%, the effect of
preventing offset of toner tends to be insufficient.

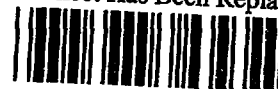
The binder resin used in the toner of the
25 present invention may preferably be prepared by mixing
in a solvent a polymer A having a weight average



1 molecular weight of from 5,000 to 30,000 and a polymer
B having a weight average molecular weight of from
400,000 to 1,500,000 and thereafter removing the
solvent. It may more preferably be prepared by mixing
5 in a solvent a polymer A having a weight average
molecular weight of from 7,000 to 25,000 and a polymer
B having a weight average molecular weight of from
450,000 to 1,000,000 and thereafter removing the
solvent. The solvent may be any of those capable of
10 dissolving the polymer A and polymer B. It includes,
for example, toluene, xylene and 2-propanol.

In preparing the binder resin used in the
toner of the present invention, the polymer A may
preferably be prepared by solution polymerization or
15 suspension polymerization, and the polymer B by
suspension polymerization or emulsion polymerization.
More preferably the polymer A should be prepared by
solution polymerization and the polymer B by
suspension polymerization.

20 In order to prepare a uniformly dispersed
binder resin, the binder resin may preferably be
prepared by mixing the polymers A and B in the solvent
and thereafter removing the solvent. It is difficult
to obtain a binder resin in a uniformly dispersed
25 state if prepared by a method wherein materials are
heated, melted and mixed using a kneader. Such a



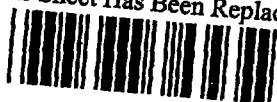
1 method makes it difficult to satisfy both the fixing
performance and anti-offset as aimed in the present
invention, and tends to cause the formation of a melt-
adhered product on a photosensitive member or the melt-
5 adhesion of a ground product to the inner wall of a
device in the course of grinding, thus being not
preferred.

If the polymer A has a weight average
molecular weight of less than 5,000, the anti-offset
10 is lowered and the grindability at the time of the
manufacture of toners is also lowered. If it has a
weight average molecular weight of more than 30,000,
the fixing performance is lowered.

If the polymer B has a weight average
15 molecular weight of less than 400,000, the
grindability tends to become poor, also undesirably
causing a lowering of anti-offset, a lowering of
blocking resistance and the formation of a melt-
adhered product on a photosensitive member. If it has
20 a weight average molecular weight of more than
1,500,000, the grindability is lowered.

It is difficult to achieve the objects of the
present invention when the polymers A and B are each
used alone as a binder resin for a toner. The objects
25 can be better achieved by the method in which the
polymers A and B are mixed in a solvent and thereafter

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 the solvent is removed than the method in which they
are melted and mixed. The polymer B makes it possible
to preferably satisfy the mutually conflicting
performances such as the anti-offset, the low-
5 temperature fixing performance and the grindability at
the time of the manufacture of toners, when the toner
is prepared by the method of the present invention.

The THF-insoluble matter referred to in the
present invention indicates the weight proportion of a
10 polymer component that has become insoluble to THF
(i.e., a giant molecule polymer or a cross-linked
polymer) in a resin composition in the toner. The THF-
insoluble matter is measured in the following way.

A toner sample is weighed in an amount of from
15 0.5 to 1.0 g (W_1 g), which is then put in a
cylindrical filter paper (for example, No. 86R,
available from Toyo Roshi K.K.) and set on a Soxhlet
extractor. Extraction is carried out for 6 hours
using from 100 to 200 ml of THF as a solvent, and the
20 soluble component extracted by the use of the solvent
is evaporated, followed by vacuum drying at 100°C for
several hours. Then the THF-soluble resin component
is weighed (W_2 g). The weight of insoluble components
other than the resin components, such as a magnetic
25 material and a pigment contained in the toner, is
represented by W_3 g. The THF-insoluble matter is



1 determined from the following expression.

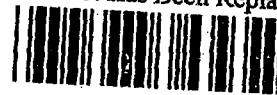
$$\text{THF-insoluble matter (\%)} = W_1 - (W_3 + W_2) / (W_1 - W_3) \times 100$$

In the present invention, the molecular weight at the peak and/or shoulder on the chromatogram

5 obtained by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) is/are measured under the following conditions.

Columns are stabilized in a heat chamber heated to 40°C. To the columns kept at this temperature, THF (tetrahydrofuran) as a solvent is
10 flowed at a flow rate of 1 ml per minute, and from 50 to 200 μ l of a THF sample solution of a resin prepared to have a sample concentration of from 0.05 to 0.6 wt.% is injected therein to make measurement. In measuring the molecular weight of the sample, the
15 molecular weight distribution ascribed to the sample is calculated from the relationship between the logarithmic value of a calibration curve prepared using several kinds of monodisperse polystyrene standard samples and the count number for flow-out
20 time. As the standard polystyrene samples used for the preparation of the calibration curve, it is suitable to use, for example, samples with molecular weights of 6×10^2 , 2.1×10^3 , 4×10^3 , 1.75×10^4 , 5.1×10^4 , 1.1×10^5 , 3.9×10^5 , 8.6×10^5 , 2×10^6
25 and 4.48×10^6 , which are available from Pressure Chemical Co. or Toyo Soda Manufacturing Co., Ltd., and

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 to use at least about 10 standard polystyrene samples.
An RI (refractive index) detector is used as a
detector.

Columns may preferably be used in combination
5 of a plurality of commercially available polystyrene
gel columns so that the regions of molecular weights
of from 10^3 to 2×10^6 can be accurately measured.
For example, they may preferably comprise a
combination of μ -Styragel 500, 10^3 , 10^4 and 10^5 ,
10 available from Waters Co.; Shodex KF-80M or a
combination of KF-802, 803, 804 and 805, available
from Showa Denko K.K.; or a combination of TSKgel
G1000H, G2000H, G2500H, G3000H, G4000H, G5000H,
G6000H, G7000H and GMH, available from Toyo Soda
15 Manufacturing Co., Ltd.

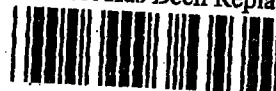
In the working examples as described later,
the molecular weight distribution of the binder resin
is measured under the following conditions.

Condition for measurement by GPC:

20 Apparatus: LC-GPC, 150C (Waters Co.)
Column: KF801-KF807 (Showdex Co.)
Column temperature: 28 to 30°C
Solvent: Tetrahydrofuran (THF)

The molecular weight distribution possessed by
25 a sample is calculated from the relation between a
logarithmic value, measured under the above

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 conditions, of a calibration curve prepared using a
polystyrene standard sample and the number of count
measured under the above conditions.

5 The SA, SB and Sd of the molecular weight
distribution curve in the binder resin used in the
toner of the present invention are determined by
calculating the weight ratios of a sample cut out from
a chromatogram obtained by GPC and calculating the
area ratios thereof.

10 In the working examples as described later,
the molecular weight distribution of the release agent
is measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography)
under the following conditions.

Apparatus: LC-GPC, 150C (Waters Co.)

15 Column: GMH6 (Toyo Soda Manufacturing Co.,
Ltd.), 60 cm

Column temperature: 140°C

Solvent: o-dichlorobenzene

20 The molecular weight distribution possessed by
a sample is calculated from the relation between a
logarithmic value measured under the above conditions,
of a calibration curve prepared using a polyethylene
standard sample and the number of count.

25 In the present invention, the melting point of
the release agent is measured using a differential
scanning calorimeter DSC-7 (manufactured by Perkin-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 Elmer Co.) to determine an endothermic peak of the
sample, which peak is regarded as a maximum melting
peak value.

Fig. 5 shows an example of the endothermic
5 peak in the DSC.

In the toner of the present invention, the
binder resin may preferably contain i) two kinds of
styrene-acrylate copolymers, a low-temperature
softening resin and a high-temperature softening
10 resin, and ii) a low-melting graft-modified polyolefin
release agent.

The low-temperature softening resin may have
an Mw of from 5.0×10^3 to 3.0×10^4 , and preferably
from 5.0×10^3 to 2.0×10^4 , a ratio of Mw to Mn
15 (Mw/Mn) of not more than 3.0, a flow-out point (herein
the temperature at which the resin begins to flow out)
in a flow tester, of from 75°C to 90°C, a softening
point of from 80°C to 110°C, and a glass transition
point (hereinafter "Tg") of from 55°C to 70°C,
20 preferably from 55°C to 65°C. The high-temperature
softening resin may have an Mw of from 4.0×10^5 to
 1.5×10^6 , an Mw/Mn of not more than 3.0, a flow-out
point of from 110°C to 160°C, a softening point of
from 150°C to 230°C, and Tg of not less than 55°C.

25 If the Mw of the low-temperature softening
resin is less than 5.0×10^3 , the blocking resistance



1 of the toner may be seriously deteriorated, the
storage stability may be damaged, and the phenomenon
of melt-adhesion of the toner to a photosensitive
member may occur at the time of development to tend to
5 adversely affect fixed images. If the Mw is more than
 3.0×10^4 , it becomes difficult to achieve the desired
low-temperature fixing performance, also resulting in
an increase in the power consumption required for the
fixing of the toner to a recording medium. When the
10 Mw/Mn of the low-temperature softening resin is
controlled to be not more than 3.0, the low-
temperature fixing performance can be improved.

If the flow-out point of the low-temperature
softening resin in a flow tester is lower than 75°C,
15 the blocking resistance of the toner may be seriously
deteriorated. On the other hand, if it is higher than
90°C, it becomes difficult to achieve the low-
temperature fixing performance when used in
combination with the high-temperature softening resin.

20 If the softening point of the low-temperature
softening resin is lower than 80°C, an excessive melt-
adhesion of the toner tends to occur in the step of
heat fixing even when used in combination with the
high-temperature softening resin, tending to bring
25 about the disadvantages that fixed-image surfaces
become glossy, toner materials penetrate into or



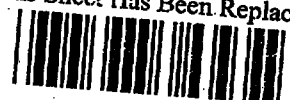
1 strike through a recording medium such as transfer
paper, and images are blurred because of the spread of
a molten toner. If the softening point is higher than
110°C, it becomes difficult to achieve the low-
5 temperature fixing performance, also resulting in an
increase in the power consumption required for the
fixing of the toner to a recording medium.

Use of the specific low-temperature softening
resin as described above enables achievement of a good
10 low-temperature fixing performance.

On the other hand, as a result of intensive
studies made by the present inventors on the offset
phenomenon, the low-temperature softening resin was
found to be preferably contained in an amount of not
15 less than 50 wt.%, more preferably not less than 65
wt.%, and most preferably not less than 70 wt.%, based
on the total weight of the binder resin, in order to
bring out the low-temperature fixing performance
attributable to the low-temperature softening resin
20 component.

The high-temperature softening resin is sought
to prevent the offset phenomenon by its addition in a
very small amount.

It has been made clear that the resin used in
25 combination with the above low-temperature softening
resin for the purpose of preventing the offset



1 phenomenon must be the high-temperature softening
resin extremely different in molecular weight and melt
viscosity characteristics from the low-temperature
softening resin.

5 In the present invention, if the Mw of the
high-temperature softening resin is less than 4.0×10^5 ,
the offset phenomenon tends to occur when this
resin is used in combination with the low-temperature
softening resin in such a proportion that enables low-
10 temperature fixing. On the other hand, if it is more
than 1.5×10^6 , the low-temperature fixing performance
tends to be damaged.

If the flow-out temperature of the high-
temperature softening resin in a flow tester is lower
15 than 110°C or the softening point is lower than 150°C ,
the offset phenomenon tends to occur when this resin
is used in combination with the low-temperature
softening resin in such a proportion that enables low-
temperature fixing. On the other hand, if the flow-
20 out temperature is higher than 160°C or the softening
point is higher than 230°C , the low-temperature fixing
performance tends to be damaged.

The high-temperature softening resin may have
a Tg of not lower than 55°C , preferably from 60°C to
25 70°C , and more preferably from 65 to 70°C . This is
due to the fact that, when materials are melt-kneaded

1 in the manufacture of toners, polymeric molecular
chains are cut to decrease the molecular weight of the
polymeric component, and hence, if the Tg is lower
than 55°C, the melt-adhesion of the toner to a
5 photosensitive member tends to occur at the time of
development.

The low-temperature softening resin and high-
temperature softening resin contained in the binder
resin may be in a proportion ranging from 50:50 to
10 90:10, preferably 65:35 to 90:10, in wt.%.
The low-temperature softening resin and high-
temperature softening resin contained in the binder
resin may be in a proportion ranging from 50:50 to
90:10, preferably 65:35 to 90:10, in wt.%.
If the amount of the low-temperature softening
resin is less than 50 wt.% and also the amount of the
high-temperature softening resin is more than 50 wt.%,
it becomes difficult to achieve the low-temperature
fixing performance. On the other hand, if the amount
of the low-temperature softening resin is more than 90
wt.% and the amount of the high-temperature softening
resin is less than 10 wt.%, the offset phenomenon
tends to occur to adversely affect fixed images.
If the amount of the low-temperature softening
resin is more than 50 wt.%, the grindability at the
time the toner is prepared tends to be seriously
lowered to lower the production efficiency of the
toner.
An additional feature in the constitution of
the toner of the present invention is that the

15

20

25

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



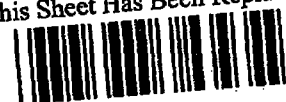
- 1 low-temperature softening resin of the binder resin is
obtained by solution polymerization, and the high-
temperature softening resin by suspension
polymerization, and that the both are mixed in a
5 solvent capable of dissolving the both.

Suspension polymerization and emulsion
polymerization are available in order to obtain the
high-temperature softening resin having the molecular
weight distribution and melt viscosity characteristics
10 as described above. In the emulsion polymerization,
however, it is difficult to prevent an emulsifying
agent from remaining, resulting in a lowering of toner
characteristics.

It is preferred for the low-temperature
15 softening resin to be synthesized by solution
polymerization taking account of its solution mixture
with the high-temperature softening resin, carried out
after completion of the polymerization.

The mixing of the low-temperature softening
20 resin and the high-temperature softening resin is
carried out by solution mixing. Other mixing methods
can not achieve uniform mixture to adversely affect
toner characteristics.

The solution mixing makes it possible to
25 remove remaining monomers when the step of removing
the solvent is taken.





1 The melting characteristics of the binder
resin can be measured using an overhead-type flow
tester as illustrated in Fig. 3 (Shimadzu Flow Tester
CFT-500 Type). In the first place, about 1.0 g of a
5 sample 3 molded using a pressure molder is extruded
from a nozzle 4 of 1 mm in diameter and 1 mm in length
under application of a load of 20 kgf using a plunger
1 at a temperature rising rate of 5.0°C/min, during
which the fall quantity of the plunger of the flow
10 tester is measured.

Here, when the height of an S-shaped curve in
the plunger fall quantity-temperature curve of the
flow tester (see the flow tester flow-out curve shown
in Fig. 4) is represented by "h", the temperature at a
15 point of $h/2$ is regarded as the softening point and
the temperature at which the sample begins to flow out
is regarded as the flow-out point or temperature.

The T_g is measured in the following way:
Using a DSC curve obtained at the time of the second
20 temperature rise, the temperature corresponding to the
position of the point at which, as shown in Fig. 5,
the center line between a base line (1) before the
endothermic peak and a base line (2) after the
endothermic peak intersects the rising curve is
25 regarded as the T_g .

The T_g in the present invention is measured



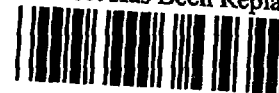
- 1 using a differential scanning calorimeter DSC-7
(manufactured by Perkin-Elmer Co.), at a temperature
rising rate of 10°C/min and according to ASTM (D3418-
82).
- 5 The resin composition in the toner of the
present invention may preferably be those obtained by
polymerizing at least one kind of monomers selected
from styrenes, acrylic acids, methacrylic acids and
derivatives thereof. These are preferable in view of
10 development properties and triboelectric properties.
As for examples of monomers that can be used, the
styrenes include styrene, α -methylstyrene,
vinyltoluene, and chlorostyrene. The acrylic acids,
methacrylic acids and derivatives thereof include
15 acrylic acid and acrylates such as methyl acrylate,
ethyl acrylate, propyl acrylate, butyl acrylate, octyl
acrylate, 2-ethylhexyl acrylate, n-tetradecyl
acrylate, n-hexadecyl acrylate, lauryl acrylate,
cyclohexyl acrylate, diethylaminoethyl acrylate, and
20 dimethylaminoethyl acrylate; methacrylic acid and
methacrylates such as methyl methacrylate, ethyl
methacrylate, propyl methacrylate, butyl methacrylate,
amyl methacrylate, hexyl methacrylate, 2-ethylhexyl
methacrylate, octyl methacrylate, decyl methacrylate,
25 dodecyl methacrylate, lauryl methacrylate, cyclohexyl
methacrylate, phenyl methacrylate, 2-hydroxyethyl



1 methacrylate, 2-hydroxypropyl methacrylate,
dimethylaminoethyl methacrylate, glycidyl
methacrylate, and stearyl methacrylate.

7 Besides the above monomers, other monomers may
5 be used in a small amount so long as the objects of
the present invention can be achieved, which include,
for example, acrylonitrile, 2-vinylpyridine, 4-
vinylpyridine, vinylcarbazole, vinyl methyl ether,
butadiene, isoprene, maleic anhydride, maleic acid,
10 maleic acid monoesters, maleic acid diesters, and
vinyl acetate.

A cross-linking agent may be used in the toner
of the present invention, and a bifunctional cross-
linking agent can be used, which includes,
15 divinylbenzene, bis(4-acryloxy-
polyethoxyphenyl) propane, ethylene glycol
diacrylate, 1,3-butylene glycol diacrylate, 1,4-
butanediol diacrylate, 1,5-pentanediol diacrylate, 1,6-
hexanediol diacrylate, neopentyl glycol diacrylate,
20 diethylene glycol diacrylate, triethylene glycol
diacrylate, tetraethylene glycol diacrylate,
diacrylates of polyethylene glycol #200, #400 and
#600, respectively, dipropylene glycol diacrylate,
polypropylene glycol diacrylate, polyester type
25 diacrylate (MANDA, available from Nippon Kayaku Co.,
Ltd.), and those in which the acrylate units of the



1 above acrylate type cross-linking agents have been
respectively replaced with methacrylate units.

A polyfunctional cross-linking agent can also
be used, which includes pentaerythritol triacrylate,
5 trimethylolethane triacrylate, trimethylolpropane
triacrylate, tetramethylolmethane tetraacrylate,
oligoester acrylate and methacrylate thereof, 2,2-
bis(4-methacryloxy, polyethoxyphenyl)propane, diallyl
phthalate, triallyl cyanurate, triallyl isocyanurate,
10 triallyl isocyanurate, triallyl trimellitate, and
diaryl chlorendate.

These cross-linking agents may preferably be
not incorporated so that the THF-insoluble matter is
controlled to be less than 10 wt.%. In the case when
15 the cross-linking agent is incorporated, it should be
used in an amount of less than 1 wt.%, preferably not
more than 0.5 wt.%, and more preferably not more than
0.2 wt.%.

The binder resin used in the toner of the
20 present invention is synthesized from monomers in the
presence or absence of the cross-linking agent and
also with use of a polymerization initiator.

The polymerization initiator may include di-t-
butyl peroxide, benzoyl peroxide, lauroyl peroxide, t-
25 butyl peroxy laurate, 2,2'-azobisisobutyronitrile, 1,1-
bis(t-butylperoxy)-3,3,5-trimethylcyclohexane,



- 1 1,1-bis(t-butylperoxy)cyclohexane, 1,1-bis(t-butylperoxycarbonyl)cyclohexane, 2,2-bis(t-butylperoxy)octane, n-butyl-4,4-bis(t-butylperoxy)valylate, 2,2-bis(t-butylperoxy)butane, 1,3-bis(t-butylperoxy-isopropyl)benzene, 2,5-dimethyl-2,5-di(t-butylperoxy)hexane, 2,5-dimethyl-2,5-di(t-butylperoxy)hexyne-3, 2,5-dimethyl-2,5-di(benzoylperoxy)hexane, di-t-butylperoxyisophthalate, 2,2-bis(4,4-di-t-butylperoxycyclohexyl)propane, di-t-butylperoxy- α -methylsuccinate, di-t-butylperoxydimethylglutarate, di-t-butylperoxyhexahydroterephthalate, di-t-butylperoxyazelate, 2,5-dimethyl-2,5-di(t-butylperoxy)hexane, diethylene glycol-bis(t-butylperoxycarbonate), di-t-butylperoxytrimethyladipate, tris(t-butylperoxy)triazine, and vinyl tris(t-butylperoxy)silane.

The above polymerization initiators may be used alone or by mixture taking account of the amount, the polymerization temperature and the half-life period.

- 20 In the toner used in the present invention, at least one kind of a release agent having a number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_n$) of not more than 1.0×10^3 , a weight average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w$) of not more than 2.5×10^3 , an $\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$ of not more than 3.0, 25 and a melting point (mp) of from 60°C to 120°C. The release agent may preferably be used in amount of from



1 0.1 to 20 wt.%, and preferably from 1 to 10 wt.%,
based on the binder resin.

Release agents preferably used in the toner of
the present invention include, for example, paraffin
5 wax, a low-molecular weight polyethylene wax, a low-
molecular weight ethylene-propylene copolymer, a low-
molecular weight polypropylene wax, and a polyolefin
wax-graft-modified with an aromatic vinyl monomer such
as styrene and styrene derivatives, an
10 unsaturated fatty acid or an unsaturated fatty acid
ester. Of these, the graft-modified polyolefin wax is
particularly preferred from the viewpoint of the
advantages that the lifetime of developers and of
machines such as copying machines making use of the
15 developers can be elongated and the machines can be
made maintenance-free.

The graft-modified polyolefin wax may have an
Mn of not more than 1.0×10^3 , and preferably from 400
to 700, an Mw of not more than 2.5×10^3 , and
20 preferably from 700 to 1,500, an Mw/Mn of not more
than 3.0, and preferably not more than 2.0, and a
melting point of from 60°C to 120°C, and preferably
from 60°C to 100°C.

Use of this release agent makes it possible to
25 carry out the heat fixing of the toner to a recording
medium under fixing conditions of low temperatures

1 without causing offset, and thus to achieve a lower
power consumption.

Intensive studies made by the present
inventors have revealed that what is required is a
5 release agent which renders good release properties at
a low temperature with respect to the low-temperature
melting binder resin which enables the low-temperature
fixing, that the temperature at which the release
agent renders release properties correlates with the
10 melting point of the release agent, and that a release
agent having a lower melting point is more
advantageous for the low-temperature fixing. When,
however, a release agent with a low melting point is
used, the release agent makes poor the blocking
15 resistance of a toner and has an ill influence that
the filming of toner to a carrier occurs when the
product is used in two-component type development.
Accordingly, in the present invention, the release
agent is made to have the molecular weight
20 distribution which is relatively sharp as described
above, so that the blocking resistance can be
improved, the release agent can render release
properties at a lower temperature, and the good
performance without causing the offset phenomenon can
25 be obtained.

However, although the low-temperature fixing

1 can be achieved to a certain extent when the release
agent with a low melting point and binder resin as
described above are used in combination, it is
technically difficult to disperse the release agent in
5 the mixed resin comprised of the low-temperature
softening resin and the high-temperature softening
resin. An insufficient dispersion adversely affects
the developing performance of toner.

Now, the present inventors made further
10 intensive studies to have discovered that the above
problems can be eliminated and a good development
performance and further low-temperature fixing
performance can be achieved when the low-melting
polyolefin wax is graft-modified in order to improve
15 the dispersion of the release agent in the binder
resin as described above.

The binder resin in the toner of the present
invention may preferably be obtained by mixing the low-
temperature softening resin and the high-temperature
20 softening resin, and both the resins may preferably be
binder resins comprising the same components.

The low-melting graft-modified polyolefin
release agent used in the present invention may
include a polyolefin wax graft-modified with an
25 aromatic vinyl monomer such as styrene and styrene
derivatives, or an unsaturated fatty acid or an



1 unsaturated fatty acid ester.

The polyolefin wax may include polyethylene waxes; homopolymers of α -olefins such as propylene, 1-butene, 1-hexene, 1-decene, and 4-methyl-1-pentene;

5 copolymers of two or more kinds of α -olefins; and copolymers of ethylene with an α -olefin. It may further include oxides of polyolefins.

The unsaturated fatty acid or unsaturated fatty acid ester used for synthesizing the graft-

10 modified polyolefin may include methacrylic acid; methacrylates such as methyl methacrylate, ethyl methacrylate, propyl methacrylate, n-butyl methacrylate, isobutyl methacrylate, n-octyl methacrylate, 2-ethylhexyl methacrylate, lauryl

15 methacrylate, stearyl methacrylate, dodecyl methacrylate, phenyl methacrylate, dimethylaminoethyl methacrylate, diethylaminoethyl methacrylate, 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl methacrylate, and glycidyl methacrylate; acrylic acid;

20 acrylates such as methyl acrylate, ethyl acrylate, propyl acrylate, n-butyl acrylate, isobutyl acrylate, n-octyl acrylate, lauryl acrylate, stearyl acrylate, dodecyl acrylate, 2-ethylhexyl acrylate, phenyl acrylate, 2-chloroethyl acrylate, 2-hydroxyethyl

25 acrylate, cyclohexyl acrylate, dimethylaminoethyl acrylate, diethylaminoethyl acrylate,

- 1 dibutylaminoethyl acrylate, 2-ethoxy acrylate, and 1,4-
butanediol diacrylate; maleic acid, fumaric acid,
itaconic acid, citraconic acid, and unsaturated
dibasic acid esters such as monoethyl maleate, diethyl
5 maleate, monopropyl maleate, dipropyl maleate,
monobutyl maleate, dibutyl maleate, di-2-ethylhexyl
maleate, monoethyl fumarate, diethyl fumarate, dibutyl
fumarate, di-2-ethylhexyl fumarate, monoethyl
itaconate, diethyl itaconate, monoethyl citraconate,
10 and diethyl citraconate. These can be used alone or
in combination of two or more kinds.

The aromatic vinyl monomer may include
styrene, o-methylstyrene, m-methylstyrene, p-
methylstyrene, α-methylstyrene, 2,4-dimethylstyrene, p-
15 ethylstyrene, p-n-butylstyrene, p-tert-butylstyrene, p-
n-dodecylstyrene, p-phenylstyrene, and p-
chlorostyrene. These can be used alone or in
combination of two or more kinds..

The polyolefin can be graft-modified using
20 conventionally known methods. For example, a reaction
of the polyolefin with the aromatic vinyl monomer and
the unsaturated fatty acid or unsaturated fatty acid
ester which are in a molten state or dissolved in a
solvent may be conducted by heating in the atmosphere
25 or under application of pressure and in the presence
of a radical initiator. A graft-modified polyolefin



1 can be thus obtained. The grafting using the aromatic
vinyl monomer and the unsaturated fatty acid or
unsaturated fatty acid ester may be carried out using
both at the same time or may be carried out using them
5 separately.

The initiator used in the grafting reaction
may include benzoyl peroxide, dichlorobenzoyl
peroxide, di-tert-butyl peroxide, lauroyl peroxide,
tert-butyl perphenyl acetate, cumine pivate,
10 azobisisobutyronitrile, dimethylazoisobutyrate, and
dicumyl peroxide.

As to the proportion of the grafting agent to
the polyolefin, the former may preferably be in an
amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 100 parts by
15 weight, and more preferably from 1 part by weight to
50 parts by weight, based on 100 parts by weight of
the latter. An amount less than 0.1 part by weight
can not bring about little effect of grafting, and an
amount more than 100 parts by weight may result in
20 loss of advantageous properties inherent in the
polyolefin.

The aromatic vinyl monomer and the unsaturated
fatty acid or unsaturated fatty acid ester may be used
preferably in a weight ratio of from 95:5 to 5:95, and
25 more preferably from 80:20 to 20:80. An excessive
amount for the unsaturated fatty acid or unsaturated



- 1 fatty acid ester tends to result in a decrease in the
releasing effect inherent in the polyolefin. An
excessive amount for the aromatic vinyl monomer can
not so much bring about an improvement in the
5 dispersibility of the polyolefin in the toner.

The graft-modified polyolefin used in the
present invention may preferably be added in an amount
of from 0.1 part by weight to ~~20 parts by weight~~, and
more preferably from 0.5 part by weight to 10 parts by
10 weight, based on 100 parts by weight of the binder
resin. An amount less than 0.1 part by weight makes
it difficult to bring about a sufficient releasing
effect, and an amount more than 20 parts by weight
tends to result in a lowering of the blocking
15 resistance of the toner.

The graft-modified polyolefin used in the
present invention may preferably have a melt viscosity
in the range of from 1 to 250 cps (centipoise) at
160°C. A melt viscosity less than 1 cps tends to
20 cause the blocking of toner. A melt viscosity more
than 250 cps makes it hard for the modified polyolefin
to bleed from the toner and makes it hard for the
releasing effect to be exhibited. In the fixing
method of the present invention, it is preferred that
25 in general a releasable component having a lower melt
viscosity is used when a lower fixing temperature is

1 selected.

The melt viscosity referred to in the present invention is based on a value measured with a Brookfield type viscometer.

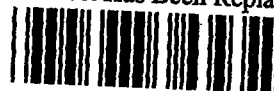
5 The toner used in the present invention may contain at least one kind of a release agent having a melting point of higher than 120°C so long as used in such an amount that may not adversely affect the fixing performance of the toner.

10 The toner of the present invention may contain a charge control agent. Conventionally known positive or negative charge control agents can be used as the charge control agent. The charge control agent may include the following:

15 (1) Those capable of controlling the toner to have positive charge may include the following materials: Nigrosine, azine dyes containing an alkyl group having 2 to 16 carbon atoms (Japanese Patent Publication No. 42-1627), basic dyes as exemplified by C.I. Basic
20 Yellow 2 (C.I.41000), C.I. Basic Yellow 3, C.I. Basic Red 1 (C.I.45160), C.I. Basic Red 9 (C.I.42500), C.I. Basic Violet 1 (C.I.42535), C.I. Basic Violet 3 (C.I.42555), C.I. Basic Violet 10 (C.I.45170), C.I. Basic Violet 14 (C.I.42510), C.I. Basic Blue 1
25 (C.I.42025), C.I. Basic Blue 3 (C.I.51005), C.I. Basic Blue 5 (C.I.42140), C.I. Basic Blue 7 (C.I.42595),



- 1 C.I. Basic Blue 9 (C.I.52015), C.I. Basic Blue 24
(C.I.52030), C.I. Basic Blue 25 (C.I.52025), C.I.
Basic Blue 26 (C.I.44025), C.I. Basic Green 1
(C.I.42040) and C.I. Basic Green 4 (C.I.42000), lake
5 pigments of these basic dyes (laking agents are
exemplified by tungstophosphoric acid,
molybdophosphoric acid, tungstomolybdophosphoric acid,
tannic acid, lauric acid, gallic acid, ferricyanides,
and ferrocyanides), C.I. Solvent black 3 (C.I.26150),
10 Hanza Yellow G (C.I.11680), C.I. Mordant Black 11,
C.I. Pigment Black 1, benzoylmethyl-hexadecylammonium
chloride, decyl-trimethylammonium chloride, dialkyltin
compounds such as dibutyltin and dioctyltin, metal
salts of higher fatty acids, inorganic fine powders
15 such as zinc oxide, metal complexes of EDTA or
acetylacetone, and polyamine resins such as vinyl
polymers containing an amino group and condensed
polymers containing an amino group. Nigrosine, metals
salts of higher fatty acids, and vinyl polymers
20 containing an amino group are particularly preferred
from the viewpoint of dispersibility.
- (2) Those capable of controlling the toner to have
negative charge may include the following materials:
Metal compounds of monoazo dyes, as disclosed in
25 Japanese Patent Publications No. 41-20153, No. 42-
27596, No. 44-6397 and No. 45-26478, nitramines and



1 salts thereof, as disclosed in Japanese Patent
Application Laid-open No. 50-133338, dyes or pigments
such as C.I.14645, metal-containing compounds formed
by the union of Zn, Al, Co, Cr or Fe with salicylic
5 acid, naphthoic acid or dicarboxylic acid, as
disclosed in Japanese Patent Publications No. 55-
42752, No. 58-41508, No. 58-7384 and No. 59-7384,
sulfonated copper phthalocyanine pigments, styrene
oligomers into which a nitro group or halogen has been
10 introduced, and chlorinated paraffins. Metal-
containing compounds of monoazo dyes, and metal-
containing compounds of salicylic acid, alkylsalicylic
acid, naphthoic acid or dicarboxylic acid are
particularly preferred from the viewpoint of
15 dispersibility.

The toner of the present invention may also be
optionally incorporated with additives to obtain good
results. The additives may include lubricants such as
Teflon, zinc stearate and polyvinylidene fluoride (in
20 particular, polyvinylidene fluoride is preferred);
abrasives such as cerium oxide, silicon carbide and
strontium titanate (in particular, strontium titanate
is preferred); fluidity-providing agents such as
colloidal silica and aluminum oxide (in particular,
25 hydrophobic colloidal silica is preferred); anti-
caking agents; and conductivity-providing agents such

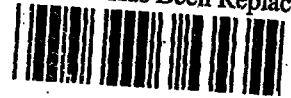


1 as carbon black, zinc oxide, antimony oxide and tin
oxide. It is also possible to use as a developability
improver, a small amount of white fine particles and
black fine particles having the polarity opposite to
5 the charge polarity of the toner.

The toner of the present invention may also be
use in the form of a mixture with carrier powder, when
used as a two-component type developer. In this
instance, the toner and the carrier powder may be
10 mixed in such a ratio that gives a toner concentration
of from 0.1 to 50 wt.%, preferably from 0.5 to 10
wt.%, and more preferably from 3 to 5 wt.%.

As the carrier powder usable in the present
invention, it is possible to use known materials.
15 They include, for example, powders having magnetic
properties, such as iron powder, ferrite powder and
nickle powder, glass beads, and glass beads whose
surfaces have been treated with a resin such as a
fluorine resin or a silicone resin.

20 The toner of the present invention may further
contain a magnetic material so that it can be used as
a magnetic toner. In this instance the magnetic
material serves as a coloring agent at the same time.
The magnetic material contained in the toner may
25 include iron oxides such as magnetite, hematite and
ferrite, or compounds of divalent metals with iron.



1 oxide; metals such as iron, cobalt and nickel, or
alloys of any of these metals with any of metals such
as aluminum, cobalt, copper, lead, magnesium, tin,
zinc, antimony, beryllium, bismuth, cadmium, calcium,
5 manganese, selenium, titanium, tungsten and vanadium,
and mixture of any of these.

These ferromagnetic materials may preferably
be those having an average particle diameter of from
0.1 μm to 2 μm , and more preferably from 0.1 μm to 0.5
10 μm . Spherical materials are particularly preferred.
The magnetic material may be contained in the magnetic
toner in an amount of from about 20 to 200 parts by
weight based on 100 parts by weight of the resin
component, and particularly preferably from 40 to 180
15 parts by weight based on 100 parts by weight of the
resin component.

The toner of the present invention may also
optionally contain a colorant.

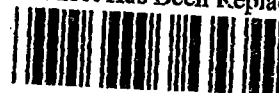
As the colorant used in the toner of the
20 present invention, a pigment or a dye may be used.
The pigment may include carbon black, Aniline Black,
acetyrene black, Naphtol Yellow, Hanza Yellow,
Rhodamine Lake, Alizarin Lake, red iron oxide,
Phthalocyanine Blue and Indanthrene Blue. The pigment
25 is used in such an amount that is necessary and
sufficient for maintaining the optical density of

1 fixed images, and should be added preferably in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 20 parts by weight, and more preferably from 2 to 10 parts by weight, based on 100 parts by weight of the resin.

5 The dye may include azo dyes, anthraquinone dyes, xanthene dyes and methine dyes. The dye should be added preferably in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 20 parts by weight, and more preferably from 0.3 part by weight to 3 parts by weight, based on 100
10 parts by weight of the resin.

The toner according to the present invention for developing an electrostatic latent image may be prepared by a method comprising thoroughly mixing the resin composition according to the present invention,
15 the release agent and the charge control agent optionally together with the magnetic material, the pigment or dye as a coloring agent and other additives by means of a mixing machine such as a ball mill, thereafter melting and kneading the mixture by the use
20 of a heat kneading machine such as a heating roll, a kneader or an extruder so that resins are mutually compatibilized and the pigment or dye is dispersed and dissolved therein, and cooling the resulting product to effect solidification, followed by crushing,
25 pulverization and then strict classification to give a toner with an average particle diameter of from 3 μ m

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 to 20 μm .

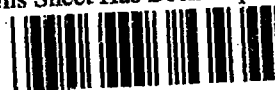
The present invention also relates to a method of heat-fixing a toner visible image, wherein the method comprises heat-fixing the toner image formed using the toner having the characteristic features as described above, to a recording medium by means of a heater element stationarily supported and a pressure member that stands opposite to said heater element in pressure contact and brings said recording medium into close contact with said heater element through a film interposed between them.

Fig. 1 illustrates the construction of the fixing device used in the present invention. The fixing method of the present invention is by no means limited only to the method embodied in it.

In the fixing device shown in Fig. 1, a heater element 11 has a smaller heat capacity than conventional heat rolls, and has a linear heating part. The heating part may preferably be made to have a maximum temperature of from 100°C to 300°C.

A film 15 is interposed between the heater element 11 and a pressure member 18, and may preferably comprise a heat-resistant sheet of from 1 to 100 μm in thickness. Heat-resistant sheets that can be used therefor may include sheets of polymers having high heat-resistance, such as polyester, PET

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 (polyethylene terephthalate), PFA (a tetrafluoro-
ethylene/perfluoroalkyl vinyl ether copolymer), PTFE
(polytetrafluoroethylene), polyimide and polyamide,
sheets of metals such as aluminum, and laminate sheets
5 comprised of a metal sheet and a polymer sheet.

In a preferred constitution of the film, these
heat-resistant sheets have a release layer and/or a
low-resistance layer.

The numeral 11 denotes a low heat capacitance
10 linear heater element stationarily supported in the
fixing device. An example thereof comprises an
alumina substrate 12 of 1.0 mm in thickness, 10 mm in
width and 240 mm in longitudinal length and a
resistance material 13 coated thereon to have a width
15 of 1.0 mm, which is electrified from the both ends in
the longitudinal direction. The electricity is
applied under variations of pulse widths of the pulses
corresponding with the desired temperatures and energy
emission quantities which are controlled by a
20 temperature sensor 14, in the pulse-like waveform with
a period of 20 msec of DC 100V. The pulse widths
range approximately from 0.5 msec to 5 msec. In
contact with the heater element 11 the energy and
temperature of which have been controlled in this way,
25 a fixing film 15 moves in the direction of the arrow
shown in the drawing. An example of this fixing film

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

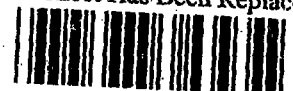


1 includes an endless film comprised of a heat-resistant
sheet of 20 μm thick (comprising, for example,
polyimide, polyetherimide, PES, or PFA) and a release
layer (comprising a fluorine resin such as PTFE or PFA
5 to which a conductive material is added) coated at
least on the side coming into contact with the image
to have a thickness of 10 μm . In general, the total
thickness of the film may preferably be less than 100
 μm , and more preferably less than 40 μm . The film is
10 moved in the direction of the arrow in a wrinkle-free
state by the action of the drive of, and tension
between, a drive roller 16 and a follower roller 17.

The numeral 18 denotes a pressure roller
having on its surface an elastic layer of rubber with
15 good release properties as exemplified by silicone
rubber. This pressure roller is pressed against the
heater element at a total pressure of 4 to 20 kg
through the film interposed between them and is
rotated in pressure contact with the film. Toner 20
20 having not been fixed on a transferring medium 19 is
led to the fixing zone by means of an inlet guide 21.
A fixed image is thus obtained by the heating
described above.

The above has been described with reference to
25 an embodiment in which the fixing film comprises an
endless belt. A sheet-feeding shaft and a wind-up

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

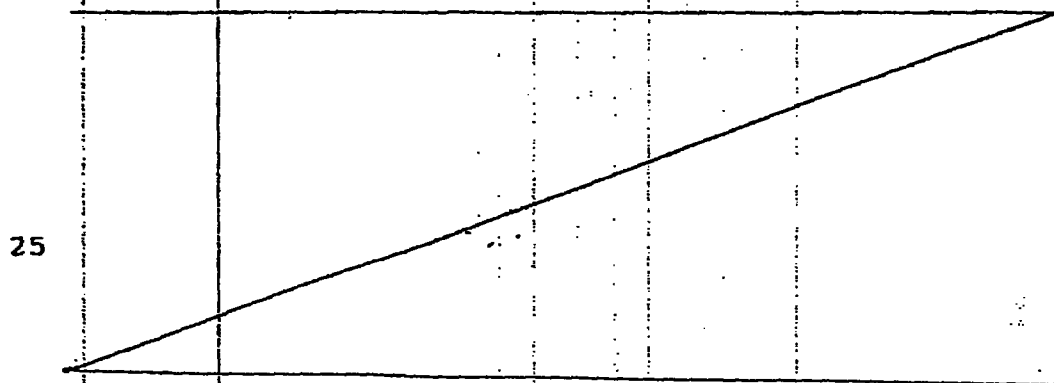


1 shaft may also be used, and the fixing film may not be
endless.

The image forming apparatus includes an
apparatus that forms an image by the use of a toner,
5 as exemplified by copying machines, printers, and
facsimile apparatus, to which the present fixing
device can be applied.

When the temperature detected by the
temperature sensor 14 in the low heat capacitance
10 linear heater element 11 is T_1 , the surface
temperature T_2 of the film 15 opposed to the
resistance material 13 is about 10 to 30°C lower than
 T_1 . The surface temperature T_3 of the film on the
part at which the film 15 is peeled from the toner-
15 fixed face is a temperature substantially equal to the
above temperature T_2 .

Suitable as methods of electrifying the heater
element according to such a temperature control system
are the pulse width modulation system, the frequency
20 modulation system, the AC phase control system, etc.



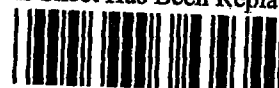
1 The present invention will be described below
in greater detail by giving synthesis examples and
working examples. The "part(s)" in the synthesis
examples and working examples refers to "part(s) by
5 weight".

Synthesis Example 1

In a reaction vessel, 200 parts of cumene was
put, and the temperature was raised to the reflux
temperature. A mixture of 100 parts of styrene
10 monomer and 6 parts of di-tert-butyl peroxide was
dropwise added thereto at 135°C in 4 hours. Under
further reflux of cumene (146°C to 156°C), the
solution polymerization was completed and then the
cumene was removed. The polystyrene thus obtained was
15 soluble in THF, and had a weight average molecular
weight of 7,800, a molecular weight peak (MA) of 7,200
and a T_g of 67°C. This is designated as polymer A-1
of the binder resin for the toner of the present
invention.

20 Synthesis Examples 2 to 5

Using the monomer compositions, polymerization
initiators and solvents as shown in Table 1, the
solution polymerization was carried out in the same
manner as in Synthesis Example 1 to give polymers A-2
25 to A-5 of the binder resin for the toner of the
present invention.



1

Table 1
Syntheses of Polymers A

5

Polymer	Monomer composition		Solvent	Polymln. initiator
	(parts)			
Synthesis Example:				
2 A-2	Styrene	(85)	Xylene	Benzoyl peroxide
	Butyl acrylate	(15)		
3 A-3	Styrene	(80)	Xylene	Benzoyl peroxide
	Butyl acrylate	(20)		
4 A-4	Styrene	(77)	Toluene	Benzoyl peroxide
	2-Ethylhexyl acrylate	(23)		
5 A-5	Styrene	(80)	Toluene	Benzoyl peroxide
	2-Ethylhexyl acrylate	(20)		

10

15

Table 1 (Cont'd)

20

Polymer	Weight average molecular weight	Molecular weight peak	Tg
A-2	11,000	9,200	62°C
A-3	17,000	15,600	62°C
A-4	21,000	19,200	57°C
A-5	24,000	22,300	64°C

25

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 Synthesis Example 6

 In a reaction vessel, 200 parts of deaerated
water in which 0.1 part of a partially saponified
product of polyvinyl alcohol was dissolved was put,
5 and then the monomer composition as shown in Table 2
was added thereto to make up a suspension. The
suspension was heated to 80°C in a nitrogen
atmosphere. The suspension was maintained at that
temperature for 24 hours, and then polymerization was
10 completed. After the reaction mixture was cooled to
room temperature, spherical polymer particles produced
as a result of the polymerization were filtered, and
then thoroughly washed with water, followed by
dehydration and drying to give polymer B-1 of the
15 binder resin for the toner of the present invention.
The polymer had a weight average molecular weight of
452,000, a molecular weight peak of 433,000 and a Tg
of 57°C.

Table 2

20

Monomer	Composition	Mixing proportion
Styrene		72 parts
Methyl methacrylate		10 parts
Butyl acrylate		18 parts
25	Benzoyl peroxide	0.22 part

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





1 Synthesis Examples 7 to 10

Using the monomer compositions and
polymerization initiators as shown in Table 3, the
suspension polymerization was carried out in the same
5 manner as in Synthesis Example 6 to give polymers B-2
to B-5 of the binder resin for the toner of the
present invention.

Table 3
Syntheses of Polymers B

10

		Monomer composition	Polymerization
		(parts)	initiator
Polymer			
Synthesis Example:			
7	B-2	Styrene (83)	Benzoyl peroxide
15		Butyl acrylate (17)	
8	B-3	Styrene (85)	Benzoyl peroxide
		Butyl acrylate (15)	
9	B-4	Styrene (77)	1,1'-azobis (cyclohexane-1- carbonitrile)
		2-Ethylhexyl acrylate (23)	
20	10	B-5	Benzoyl peroxide
		Styrene (80)	
		Butyl acrylate (20)	
		Divinylbenzene (0.02)	

25

1

Table 3 (Cont'd)

Polymer	Weight average	Molecular weight	Tg
	molecular weight	peak	
B-2	603,000	583,000	64°C
B-3	827,000	804,000	67°C
B-4	956,000	928,000	66°C
B-5	751,000	692,000	60°C

10

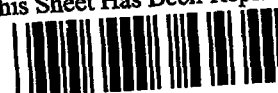
The weight average molecular weight (Mw), Mw/Mn, flow-out point, softening point and Tg of each of the above polymers A-1, A-2, A-3, A-4, A-5, B-1, B-2, B-3, B-4 and B-5 are shown in Table 4 below.

15

20

25

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1

Table 4

	Polymer	Mw	Mw/Mn	Flow-out	Softening	Tg
				point	point	
5				(°C)	(°C)	(°C)
	A-1	7,800	2.4	85	105	67
	A-2	11,000	2.4	85	102	62
	A-3	17,000	2.2	87	105	62
	A-4	21,000	2.3	87	106	57
10	A-5	24,000	2.2	90	110	64
	B-1	452,000	2.6	116	161	57
	B-2	603,000	2.5	122	173	64
	B-3	827,000	2.3	130	184	67
	B-4	956,000	2.1	132	182	66
15	B-5	751,000	2.6	127	180	60

Comparative Synthesis Example 1

20 A comparative polymer A-6 was prepared in the same manner as in Example 1 except that the monomer composition as shown in Table 5 was used. This binder resin had a weight average molecular weight of 4,300, a molecular weight peak of 4,200 and a Tg of 54°C.

25

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





1

Table 5

Monomer Composition	Mixing proportion
Styrene	92 parts
5 Butyl acrylate	8 parts
Di-tert-butyl peroxide	9 parts

Comparative Synthesis Example 2

10

A comparative polymer B-6 was prepared in the same manner as in Synthesis Example 6 except that the monomer composition as shown in Table 6 was used.

This binder resin had a weight average molecular weight of 217,000, a molecular weight peak of 198,000 and a Tg of 59°C.

15

Table 6

Monomer Composition	Mixing proportion
Styrene	82 parts
20 Butyl acrylate	18 parts
Divinylbenzene	0.2 part
Benzoyl peroxide	0.5 part

25

Preparation examples of the binder resin according to the present invention will be described



1 below.

Preparation Example 1

To 200 parts of xylene, 68 parts of polymer A-
1 and 32 parts of polymer B-4 were added with
5 stirring. Next, the mixture was heated to about 60°C
to completely dissolve the polymers A-1 and B-4 added.
After the stirring was continued for about 2 hours,
the xylene was removed. The resulting product is
designated as binder resin 1 for the toner of the
10 present invention.

Preparation Examples 2 to 10 and Comparative

Binder Resin Preparation Examples 1 to 3

Binder resins 2 to 10 for the toner of the
present invention and comparative binder resins 1 to 3
15 were obtained in the same manner as in Preparation
Example 1 except that the polymers as shown in Table 7
were used.

20

25



1

Table 7

Preparation of Binder Resins and Comparative Binder Resins

5

Preparation example	Polymer A	Polymer B
Binder resin 2	A-2 66 parts	B-5 34 parts
" 3	A-3 72 parts	B-4 28 parts
" 4	A-4 55 parts	B-3 45 parts
" 5	A-5 68 parts	B-4 32 parts
10 " 6	A-4 60 parts	B-4 40 parts
" 7	A-2 65 parts	B-3 35 parts
" 8	A-3 70 parts	B-3 30 part
" 9	A-4 60 parts	B-2 40 parts
" 10	A-5 65 parts	B-3 35 parts
15 Comp. binder resin 1	A-2 100 parts	0 part
" " 2	Comp. 30 parts	Comp. 70 parts
" " A-6		B-6
" " 3	0 part	B-2 100parts

20

Note: Comp.= Comparative

Composition and physical properties of release agents used in Examples and Comparative Examples described below are shown in Table 8.

25

1

5

10

15

20

25

Table 8

Release agent	Wax	Graft component (weight ratio)	Graft compo- nent/wax		Mn	Mw/Mn	Melt- ing point
			wt. ratio	Mw			
Graft-modified wax A	PE	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl fumarate(1)	1/100	1,900	880	2.2	95
Graft-modified wax B	PE	Styrene	25/100	820	530	1.5	91
Graft-modified wax C	PE	Dibutyl fumarate	30/100	810	550	1.5	101
Graft-modified wax D	PB-1	Styrene(3)/ dibutyl maleate(1)	5/100	750	500	1.5	81
Graft-modified wax E	PE*	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl maleate(1)	40/100	980	530	1.8	108
Graft-modified wax F	PE*	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl maleate(1)	15/100	1,650	750	2.2	115
Graft-modified wax G	PW	Styrene(1)/ diethyl maleate(1)	18/100	800	500	1.6	82
Graft-modified wax H	PE	o-Methylstyrene(1)/ dibutyl maleate(1)	10/100	1,200	500	2.4	112
Graft-modified wax I	PP	Styrene(1.5)/ dibutyl maleate(1)	8/100	2,000	850	2.4	117
Graft-modified wax J	PE	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl acrylate(2)	10/100	800	530	1.5	93
Wax 1	PP	-	-	4,900	1,300	3.8	135
Wax 2	PE	-	-	1,150	560	2.1	109
Wax 3	PE	-	-	5,200	1,370	3.8	128
Wax 4	PE	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl acrylate(1)	10/100	1,500	450	3.3	78

PE: Polyethylene, PB: Polybutene, PW: Paraffin wax, PP: Polypropylene
 * trade name: Sazol Wax H2

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 Example 1

Binder resin 1	100 parts
Magnetic material	60 parts
Negative charge control agent	2 parts
5 Graft-modified polyethylene wax A	3 parts

The above materials were premixed using a Henschel mixer, and then kneaded for 20 minutes using a twin-roll mill heated to 150°C. The kneaded product was left to cool, and then crushed with a cutter mill.

10 Thereafter the crushed product was finely pulverized by means of a fine grinding mill making use of a jet stream, followed by classification using an air classifier to give a black fine powder (a magnetic toner) with a volume average particle diameter of 11.2
15 μm .

Based on 100 parts of the magnetic toner, 0.4 part of fine colloidal silica powder was dry-blended to give a toner having colloidal silica on the surfaces of toner particles. This is designated as
20 toner 1 of the present invention.

Grindability of toners can be represented by the throughput of the toner that can be pulverized per unit hour. In the case of the toner 1, it was 16 kg/hr at an air pressure of 5.6 kg/cm², and found very
25 good. No melt-adhesion or the like occurred in the grinding mill.



1 Blocking resistance was examined on the basis
of the degree of agglomeration observed when about 10
g of toner was put in a polyethylene glass of 100 cc
and left to stand at 50°C for a day. The degree of
5 agglomeration was measured with Powder Tester
manufactured by Hosokawa Micron Corporation. A
product left at room temperature and the product left
at 50°C for a day showed 9 wt.% and 12 wt.%,
respectively, which were substantially the same
10 values, and the difference (ΔG) was only 3 %. From
these facts it was confirmed that substantially no
blocking occurred.

Fixing performance, anti-offset, wind-around
resistance, and image properties or durability were
15 examined using a modified machine of a copier NP-6650,
manufactured by Canon Inc..

The preset temperature of its fixing device
was dropped by 5°C, at which the tests were carried
out.

20 In particular, as to the anti-offset, the
cleaning mechanism for the fixing roller was detached
from the copying machine and the evaluation was made
by counting, as copy durability, the number of copy
sheets at which an image was stained or the fixing
25 roller was contaminated.

As to the fixing performance, fixed images



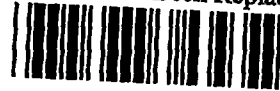


1 were rubbed 10 times with lens cleaning paper "Dusper"
(trademark; OZU Paper Co., Ltd.) under application of
a load of about 100 g, and any peeling of the fixed
images was indicated by the rate (%) of decrease in
5 reflection density. The fixed image for evaluation
was the 200th sheet when copies were continuously
taken on 200 sheets.

As to the wind-around resistance, entirely
solid black images were produced on three sheets, and
10 the state of traces left on images when the sheets are
peeled with peel claws of the fixing roller was
examined to judge the degree to which the peeling
relied on the claws.

As a result, in respect of the fixing
15 performance, the rate of decrease was 3 % and it was
found very good. The anti-offset was so good that no
stain or contamination was seen on images or the
roller even when copies were taken on 50,000 sheets.
The wind-around resistance was also found very good
20 although traces made by the claws were slightly left
on the images.

Running tests were carried out on about 10,000
sheets, using an image with an image-area percentage
of about 5 %. As a result, images were reproduced in
25 a good state. Although the melt-adhesion and filming
to the photosensitive member were slightly seen, the



1 copied images were not affected at all.

The toner had a THF-insoluble matter of 4 wt.%, an Mw/Mn according to GPC of the THF-soluble matter, of 38.2, a molecular weight peak MA of 7,700, 5 a molecular weight peak MB of 765,000, an MB/MA of 99, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sc of 1:0.36:0.60.

Example 2

Binder resin 2	100 parts
10 Magnetic material	80 parts
Positive charge control agent	2 parts
Graft-modified wax B	4 parts

The above materials were premixed using a Henschel mixer, and then kneaded for 20 minutes using 15 a twin-roll mill heated to 150°C. The kneaded product was left to cool, and then crushed with a cutter mill. Thereafter the crushed product was finely pulverized by means of a fine grinding mill making use of a jet current, followed by classification using an air 20 classifier to give a black fine powder (a magnetic toner) with a volume average particle diameter of 8.7 μm .

Based on 100 parts of the magnetic toner, 0.4 part of fine colloidal silica powder was dry-blended 25 to give a toner having colloidal silica on the surfaces of toner particles. This is designated as

1 toner 2 of the present invention.

Grindability of the toner was 5.8 kg/hr at an
air pressure of 5.6 kg/cm², and found very good. No
melt-adhesion or the like occurred in the grinding
5 mill.

Blocking resistance was examined on the basis
of the degree of agglomeration observed when about 10
g of toner was put in a polyethylene glass of 100 cc
and left to stand at 50°C for a day. A product left
10 at room temperature and the product left at 50°C for a
day showed 17 wt.% and 21 wt.%, respectively, which
were substantially the same values, and the difference
(ΔG) was only 4 %. From these facts it was confirmed
that substantially no blocking occurred.

15 Fixing performance, anti-offset, wind-around
resistance, and image properties or durability were
examined using a modified machine of a copier NP-4835,
manufactured by Canon Inc.

The preset temperature of its fixing device
20 was dropped by 10°C, at which the tests were carried
out.

In particular, as to the anti-offset, the
cleaning mechanism for the fixing roller was detached
from the copying machine and the evaluation was made
25 by counting, as copy durability, the number of copy
sheets at which an image was stained or the fixing

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 roller was contaminated.

The fixing performance and the wind-around resistance were also evaluated in the same manner as in Example 1.

5 As a result, in respect of the fixing performance, the rate of decrease was 6 % and it was found very good. The anti-offset was so good that no stain or contamination was seen on images or the roller even when copies were taken on 1,000 sheets.

10 The wind-around resistance was also found very good although traces made by the claws were slightly left on the images.

Running tests were carried out on about 30,000 sheets, using an image with an image-area percentage of about 5 %. As a result, images were reproduced in a good state. No melt-adhesion nor filming to the photosensitive member was seen.

20 The toner 2 had a THF-insoluble matter of 2 wt.%, an Mw/Mn according to GPC of the THF-soluble matter, of 24.7, a molecular weight peak MA of 14,000, a molecular weight peak MB of 680,000, an MB/MA of 48.6, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1:0.40:0.59.

Example 3

25 Using the toner 2 prepared in Example 2, unfixed images were obtained by means of a modified

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 machine of a copier FC-5, manufactured by Canon Inc.

A test for fixing the unfixed images was carried out using the external fixing device as shown in Fig. 1, comprising a pressure member that stands
5 opposite to a heater element in pressure contact and brings a recording medium into close contact with the heater element through a film interposed between them.

Used as a material of the fixing film 15 was an endless film comprising a polyimide film coated with
10 a release layer with a thickness of 10 μm to which a fluorine resin and a conductive material were added. A silicone rubber was used as the pressure roller 18, and the fixing was carried out with a nip of 3.5 mm, under a total pressure of 8 kg between the heater
15 element 11 and the pressure roller 18, and at a process speed of 50 mm/sec. The film was moved in the direction of the arrow in a wrinkle-free state by the action of the drive of, and tension between, the drive roller 16 and the follower roller 17.

20 The heater element 11 was comprised of a low heat capacitance linear heater element, to which energy was pulsewise applied and temperature control was carried out. The resistance material of the heater element 11 had a power consumption of 150 W.

25 Temperatures were so controlled as to be the same as, or lower by 15°C than the fixing assembly (preset



1 fixing temperature: 180°C) of the FC-5 modified
machine, at which the tests were carried out. As a
result, the fixing performance was 2 % in terms of the
rate of decrease without stain and contamination on
5 both the image and the fixing film even after 3,000
sheet running, and found good. In addition, the
waiting time was 3 seconds or less, and the power
consumption was significantly lower than that in a
heat-roller fixing system.

10 Example 4

Binder resin 8	100 parts
Carbon black	4 parts
Positive charge control agent	2 parts
Graft-modified wax A	5 parts

15 Using the above materials, a toner was
prepared in the same manner as in Example 2. This
toner and colloidal silica were mixed in amounts of
100 parts and 0.4 part, respectively. The resulting
toner is designated as toner 3 of the present
20 invention. In iron powder with a particle size of 200
mesh-pass and 300 mesh-on, the toner 3 was mixed in an
amount of about 10 wt.% to give a developer. Only the
toner was replenished.

25 The grindability of this toner was 15.2 kg/hr
in terms of the throughput under an air pressure of
5.6 kg/cm², and was found very good. There also

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 occurred no melt-adhesion to the interior of the
grinding mill. The blocking resistance was evaluated
as $\Delta G = 5$, and was found not problematic at all.

Image properties and fixing performance were
5 evaluated using a modified machine of a copier FC-3,
manufactured by Canon Inc. As a result, images were
reproduced in a good state, and stable images were
obtained even after 1,000 sheet running. In addition,
no melt-adhesion nor filming to the photosensitive
10 drum was seen.

The preset temperature of the fixing assembly
was dropped by 20°C and also the cleaning mechanism
was detached from the fixing assembly, under the state
of which the above running was carried out. As a
15 result, the fixing performance was about 5 % in terms
of the rate of decrease, and was found good. The anti-
offset and the wind-around resistance were also found
good.

The present toner had a THF-insoluble matter
20 of 1.8 wt.%, an Mw/Mn according to GPC of the THF-
soluble matter, of 29, a molecular weight peak MA of
18,000, a molecular weight peak MB of 770,000, an
MB/MA of 43, and a molecular weight distribution curve
area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1:0.43:0.38.

25 Examples 5 to 8

Toners 4 to 7 of the present invention were

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 obtained in the same manner as in Example 1 except
that the binder resin was replaced with the binder
resins as shown in Fig. 9.

Examples 9 to 11

5 Toners 8 to 10 of the present invention were
obtained in the same manner as in Example 2 except
that the binder resin and release agent were replaced
with those as shown in Fig. 9.

Results of the evaluation made on the toners
10 of Examples 5 to 11 are shown in Table 10.

Comparative Example 1

Comparative toner 1 was obtained in the same
manner as in Example 2 except that comparative binder
resin 1 was used which contained 100 parts of polymer
15 A-2 only as the binder resin.

In the case of this comparative toner, fine
toner particles were formed in a large quantity when
it was pulverized under an air pressure of 5.6 kg/cm^2 ,
resulting in a broad particle size distribution. Thus
20 the productivity was clearly inferior.

Using the FC-5 modified machine, the fixing
performance, anti-offset, wind-around resistance, and
image properties or durability were examined in the
same manner as in Example 2.

25 As a result, in respect of the anti-offset,
stain and contamination were respectively occurred on



1 both the images and the roller when copies were taken
on 20 sheets. In respect of the wind-around
resistance, traces made by the peel claws were clearly
left on the images. In some instances, no paper was
5 discharged from the fixing assembly.

The present toner had a THF-insoluble matter
of 0 wt.%, an Mw/Mn according to GPC of the THF-
soluble matter, of 2.1, and a molecular weight peak MA
of 8,900.

10 Comparative Example 2 and 3

Comparative toners 2 and 3 were obtained in
the same manner as in Example 2 except that the binder
resins and release agents were changed to those shown
in Table 9. Results of the evaluation made thereon
15 are shown in Table 10..

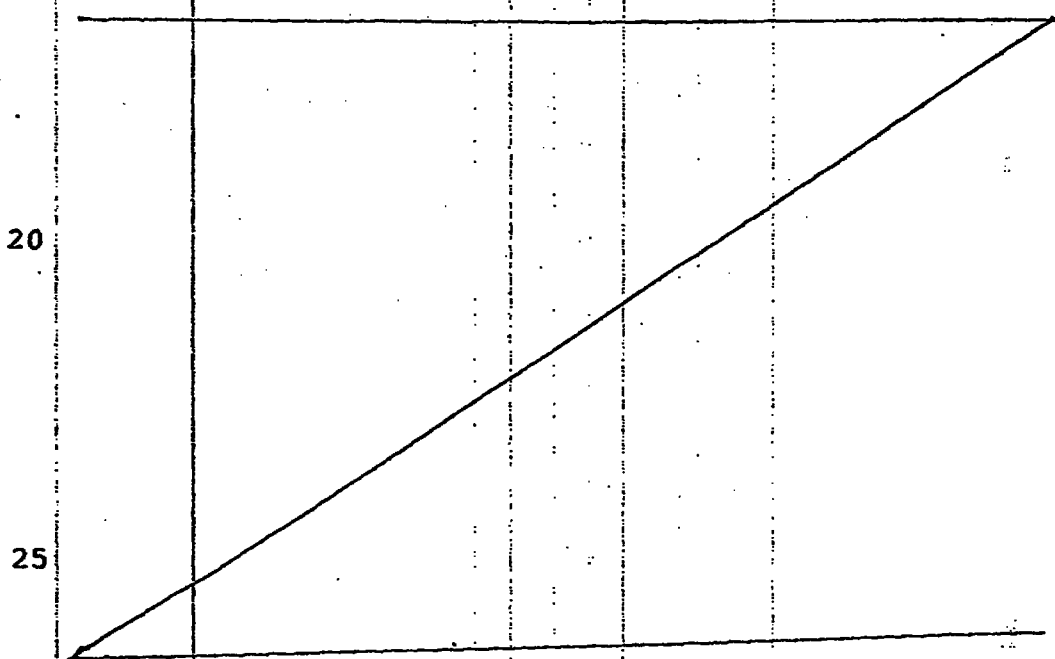


Table 9

THF-in-								
Binder resin	soluble matter	Mw/Mn	MA	MB	MB/MA	SA:SB:Sd	Release agent	
Example: 5	4	1.3	31	10,000	310,000	31	1:0.43:0.59	Graft-modified wax C
6	10	1.5	20	13,000	667,000	51	1:0.37:0.56	Graft-modified wax D
7	9	2.0	25	18,000	568,000	32	1:0.41:0.39	Graft-modified wax E
8	6	0.5	29	18,000	770,000	43	1:0.43:0.48	Graft-modified wax F
9	7	1.0	46	8,600	667,000	78	1:0.38:0.55	Graft-modified wax G
10	3	1.5	26	15,000	770,000	51	1:0.30:0.60	Graft-modified wax H
11	5	1.0	22	21,000	760,000	36	1:0.35:0.50	Graft-modified wax I
Comparative Example:								
2	Cp-2	12	16	4,100	180,000	44	1:0.83:0.47	Wax 1
3	Cp-3	1.0	2.4	-	570,000	-	-	Wax 2

Cp: Comparative binder resin

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



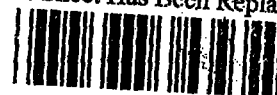


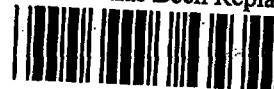
Table 10

Results of Evaluation on Toners of the Invention
and Comparative Toner

	Grind- ability	Block- ing resist- ance (ΔG)	Fixing perform- ance	Anti- offset	Melt- adhesion and filming to photosensi- tive member	
5	Example:					
	5	Good	4 %	1 %	Good	Same as Ex.1
10	6	Good	4 %	4 %	Good	Same as Ex.1
	7	Good	5 %	3 %	Good	Same as Ex.1
	8	Good	3 %	5 %	Good	Same as Ex.1
	9	Good	3 %	3 %	Good	Not at all
	10	Good	4 %	4 %	Good	Not occurred
15	11	Good	4 %	2 %	Good	Not occurred
	Comparative Example:					
	2	Poor	4 %	15 %	Poor	Occurred
	3	Inferior	4 %	50 %	Poor	Not occurred

Preparation of resin 11

In a reaction vessel, 200 parts of xylene was put, and the temperature was raised to the reflux temperature. A mixture of 90 parts of styrene monomer, 10 parts of butyl acrylate monomer and 7



1 parts of di-tert-butyl peroxide was mixed therein, and
the solution polymerization was completed in 6 hours
under reflux of xylene.

The styrene-butyl acrylate copolymer
5 (hereinafter "St-BA copolymer") thus obtained had the
physical properties as shown in the column of "Low-
temperature softening resin" on "Resin 11" in Table
11.

On the other hand, 82 parts of styrene
10 monomer, 18 parts of butyl acrylate monomer, 0.3 part
of polyvinyl alcohol, 200 parts of deaerated water and
0.11 part of benzoyl peroxide were mixed and
suspendedly dispersed. The resulting suspension was
heated and maintained at 78°C for 24 hours in a
15 nitrogen atmosphere, and then the polymerization was
completed to give a high-temperature softening resin
as shown on "Resin 11" in Table 11.

A dried product of this high-temperature
softening resin was introduced in the resin solution
20 formed when the solution polymerization for the above
low-temperature softening resin was completed, and
made to completely dissolve in a solvent. Thereafter
the solvent was removed. Resin 11 was thus prepared.

Preparation of resins 12 to 15 and comparative
25 resins 4 to 6.

Resins 12 to 15 and comparative resins 4 to 6,

1 as shown in Table 11, were respectively synthesized
and prepared according to the procedure for resin 11.

Example 12

5 After 100 parts of the resin 11, 70 parts of a
magnetic material, 2 parts of a positive charge
control agent and 4 parts of graft-modified
polyethylene wax J ($M_n: 5.3 \times 10^2$; $M_w: 8.0 \times 10^2$;
 $M_w/M_n: 1.5$; melting point: 93°C) in which styrene and
butyl acrylates were used as graft components, the
10 mixture was melt-kneaded using a twin-screw extruder.
The kneaded product was cooled and then pulverized by
means of an jet-stream grinding mill, followed by
classification using an air classifier to give a black
fine powder (a magnetic toner) with a volume average
15 particle diameter of about $8.5 \mu\text{m}$. Based on 100 parts
of the resulting magnetic toner, 0.6 part of
hydrophobic colloidal silica powder was added and
blended to give toner A, having hydrophobic colloidal
silica on the surfaces of toner particles.

20 Unfixed images of this toner A were obtained
using a modified machine, a copier NP-1215
(manufactured by Canon Inc.) from which the fixing
assembly was detached. Commercially available copy
paper, Canon New Dry Paper (54 g/m^2 ; Canon Sales Inc.)
25 was used as a recording medium.

A tests for fixing the unfixed images was

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 carried out using a temperature-variable heat roller
external fixing assembly comprising an upper roller
comprised of Teflon and a lower roller comprised of
silicone rubber, under conditions of a nip of 4 mm, a
5 pressure between the upper and lower rollers, of 0.4
kg/cm in linear pressure and a process speed of 45
mm/sec, and with temperature control at intervals of
5°C within the temperature range of from 100°C to
230°C. The fixed images thus obtained were rubbed
10 with lens cleaning paper "Dusper" (trademark; OZU
Paper Co., Ltd.) under application of a load of 50
g/cm², and the temperature at which the rate of
decrease in image density before and after the rubbing
was not more than 7 % was regarded as a fixing
15 starting temperature. As to anti-offset tests, the
fixed images and the rollers were observed to make
evaluation.

As a result, the fixing starting temperature
was as low as 120°C and a non-offset region was seen
20 at 110 to 215°C, showing that the low-temperature
fixing had been achieved. The toner also showed a
good blocking resistance. The blocking resistance was
evaluated on samples obtained after toners were left
in a 50°C dry container for 3 days.

25 Results of the evaluation are shown in Table
13.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 Examples 13 to 16

Toners B to E were prepared using resins 12 to 15, respectively, shown in Table 11 in the same manner as in Example 12. Evaluation was made on their fixing performance.

The resulting toners are noted as Examples 13 to 16, respectively, and the results of the evaluation are shown in Table 13.

10 Comparative Examples 4 to 6

Toners F to H were prepared using comparative resins 4 to 6, respectively, shown in Table 11 in the same manner as in Example 12. Evaluation was made on their fixing performance.

The resulting toners are noted as Comparative Examples 4 to 6, respectively, and the results of the evaluation are shown in Table 13.

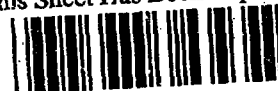
15 Comparative Example 7

Toner I was prepared in the same manner as in Example 13 except that 3 parts of wax 3 (polyethylene wax) melting at 128°C was used as the release agent. Evaluation was made on its fixing performance.

Results obtained are shown in Table 13.

20 Comparative Example 8

Toner J was prepared in the same manner as in Example 12 except that 3 parts of wax 4 (graft-modified polyethylene wax) obtained by subjecting



1 polyethylene wax ($M_n: 4.5 \times 10^2$; $M_w: 1.5 \times 10^3$; M_w/M_n :
3.3) to the same graft modification as in Example 1
was used as the release agent. Evaluation was made on
its fixing performance. Results obtained are shown in
5 Table 13.

As will be evident from Table 13, the toners
of Examples 12 to 16 have achieved good low-
temperature fixing performance, anti-offset, blocking
resistance and developing performance. However, with
10 regard to the toner of Comparative Example 4, though
achievable of low-temperature fixing performance, it
shows a poor anti-offset. With regard to the toner of
Comparative Example 5, it shows a poor low-temperature
fixing performance.

15 In respect of the toner of Comparative Example
6, no low-temperature fixing performance is achieved.
In respect of the toner of Comparative Example 7,
there are problems in the low-temperature fixing
performance and developing performance.

20 In respect of the toner of Comparative Example
8, it has achieved the low-temperature fixing
performance but shows a poor blocking resistance.

From the foregoing, it has been made clear
that the toners for developing electrostatic images
25 according to the present invention have superior low-
temperature fixing performance and anti-offset, and



1 have the composition that does not adversely affect
the blocking resistance and developing performance.

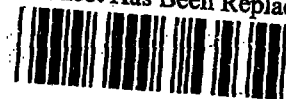
Example 17

Unfixed images were obtained using as a toner
5 the toner A as used in Example 12.

A test for fixing the unfixed images was
carried out using the external fixing device as shown
in Fig. 1, provided with a pressure member that stands
opposite to a heater element in pressure contact and
10 brings a recording medium into close contact with the
heater element through a film interposed between them.
Used as a material of the fixing film 15 was an
endless film comprising a polyimide film coated with
a release layer with a thickness of 10 μ m to which a
15 fluorine resin and a conductive material were added.
A silicone rubber was used as the pressure roller 18,
and the fixing was carried out with a nip of 3.5 mm
and at a process speed of 45 mm/sec. The film was
moved in the direction of the arrow in a wrinkle-free
20 state by the action of the drive of, and tension
between, the drive roller 16 and the follower roller
17.

The heater element 11 was comprised of a low
heat capacitance linear heater element, to which
25 energy was pulsewise applied and temperature control
was carried out. Temperatures were controlled in the

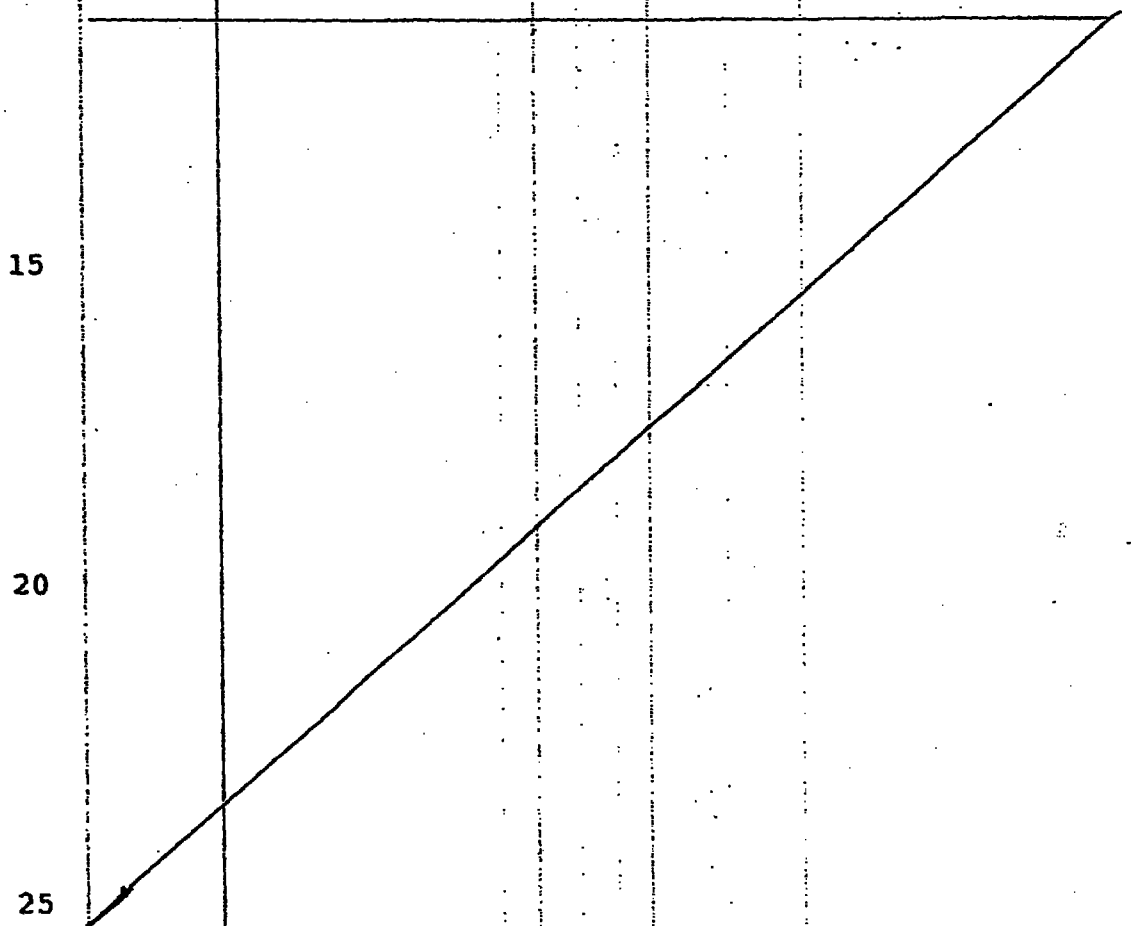
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 same manner as in Example 12, i.e., at intervals of
5°C within the range of from 100 to 230°C.

As a result, the fixing starting temperature
was as low as 120°C and a non-offset region was seen
5 at 105 to 215°C, showing that the low-temperature
fixing had been achieved. The toner also showed a
good wind-around resistance.

Table 12 shows physical properties of the
binder resins 11 to 15 and comparative binder resins 4
10 to 6.



This Sheet Has Been Replaced



25

20

15

10

5

1

Table 11

Low-temperature softening resin				High-temperature softening resin			
Com- posi- tion/ amount (wt.%)	Mw	Mw/Mn	(1) (2) Tg °C °C	Com- posi- tion/ amount (wt.%)	Mw	Mw/Mn	(1) (2) Tg °C °C
Resin:							
11 St-BA (75)	1.1x10 ⁴	2.4	85 103 58	St-BA (25)	9.5x10 ⁵	2.5	131 184 69.5
12 St-BA (70)	6.5x10 ³	2.2	84 101 57	St-BA (30)	9.5x10 ⁵	2.5	131 184 69.5
13 St-BA (70)	1.5x10 ⁴	2.5	86 104 58	St-BA (30)	6.4x10 ⁵	2.4	122 172 65.5
14 St-2EHA (75)	1.1x10 ⁴	2.5	86 104 59	St-2EHA (25)	7.3x10 ⁵	2.3	127 180 67.0
15 St-BA (80)	6.5x10 ³	2.2	84 101 57	St-BA-DVB (20)	1.0x10 ⁶	2.5	135 193 70.5
Comp. binder resin:							
4 St-BA (70)	6.5x10 ³	2.2	84 101 57	St-BA (30)	3.6x10 ⁵	2.5	101 147 65
5 St-BA (55)	6.5x10 ³	2.2	84 101 57	St-BA (45)	3.6x10 ⁵	2.5	101 147 65
6 St-BA (90)	2.5x10 ⁴	2.3	92 115 58	St-BA (10)	9.5x10 ⁵	2.5	131 184 69.5

(1): Flow-out point, (2): Softening point
 St: Styrene, DVB: Divinylbenzene
 BA: Butyl acrylate
 2EHA: 2-Ethylhexyl acrylate
 Comp.: Comparative

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



25

20

15

10

5

1

Table 12

Binder resin	THF-insoluble matter	Mw/Mn	MA	MB	MB/MA	SA:SB:Sd
11	0.9	28	8.0×10^3	6.3×10^5	78.8	1:0.35:0.48
12	1.2	30	4.5×10^3	6.3×10^5	140	1:0.40:0.55
13	1.3	24	1.1×10^4	4.8×10^5	43.6	1:0.39:0.40
14	1.0	26	8.0×10^3	5.1×10^5	63.8	1:0.34:0.45
15	2.0	38	4.5×10^3	6.7×10^5	148.9	1:0.31:0.60
Comp. binder resin:						
4	0.9	27	4.5×10^3	2.9×10^5	64.4	1:0.40:0.38
5	1.1	20	4.5×10^3	2.9×10^5	64.4	1:0.71:0.36
6	0.7	25	2.1×10^4	6.3×10^5	30	1:0.22:0.37

Comp.: Comparative

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1

Table 13

Evaluation on Fixing Performance

5

		Fixing start- ing temp. (°C)	Non- offset temp. range (°C)	Fixing temp. range	Block- ing resist- ance (50°C, 3 days)	Devel- oping per- form- ance
Example:						
	12, Toner A	120	110-215	95	A	A
	13, Toner B	115	110-215	100	A	A
10	14, Toner C	125	110-210	85	A	A
	15, Toner D	120	110-215	95	A	A
	16, Toner E	110	105-210	100	A	A
Comparative Example:						
	4, Toner F	115	110-155	40	A	A
15	5, Toner G	140	135-210	70	A	A
	6, Toner H	150	140-215	65	A	A
	7, Toner I	140	135-210	70	A	BC
	8, Toner J	115	110-215	100	BC	A
Example:						
20	17 Toner A	120	105-215	95	A	A

A: Good, BC: Poor or problematic

25

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1 As described above, the present invention can
achieve a low cost in the operation of copying
machines and yet can provide good images, because of
the superior low-temperature fixing performance and
5 developing performance of the toner.

 A toner for developing an electrostatic image,
comprises a binder resin and a colorant. Such binder
resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of
less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in
10 the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel
permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter,
has a weight average molecular weight/number average
molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight
peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from
15 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the
region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to
1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region
of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000,
provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150,
20 and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio
SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8.

25

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





4

1 CLAIMS:

1. A toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprising a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\overline{M}_w/\overline{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex A corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





1 molecular weight distribution curve by Sd.

2. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin
5 contains the THF-insoluble matter in an amount of not
more than 5 % by weight.

3. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin
10 has an Mw/Mn of not less than 20.

4. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin
has an Mw/Mn of from 25 to 60.

15 5. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin
has a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a
molecular weight of from 5,000 to 15,000, a molecular
20 weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of
from 450,000 to 900,000, a molecular weight minimum Md
in the region of a molecular weight of from 30,000 to
300,000.

25 6. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





1 has an MB/MA of from 30 to 120.

7. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin
5 has an MB/MA of from 40 to 100.

8. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin
has a molecular weight peak other than the MA, in the
10 region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000.

9. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin
has a molecular weight peak other than the MB, in the
15 region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to
1,000,000.

10. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin
20 has a molecular weight minimum other than the Md, in
the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to
380,000.

11. A toner for developing an electrostatic
25 image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin
has a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





1 SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.7 : 0.4 to 0.7.

12. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin
5 has a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio
SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.6 : 0.5 to 0.7.

13. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin
10 further comprises a release agent.

14. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 13, wherein said release
agent is contained in an amount of from 0.1 % by
15 weight to 20 % by weight based on the binder resin.

15. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 13, wherein said release
agent is contained in an amount of from 1 % by weight
20 to 10 % by weight based on the binder resin.

16. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 13, wherein said release
agent has a number average molecular weight (Mn) of
25 not more than 1,000, a weight average molecular weight
(Mw) of not more than 2,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





1 3, and a melting point of from 60 to 120°C.

17. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 1, wherein said release agent
5 has an Mn of from 400 to 700, an Mw of from 500 to
1,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 2.5, and a melting
point of from 60 to 100°C, and is contained in an
amount of from 1 % by weight to 10 % by weight based
on the binder resin.

10

18. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 13, wherein said release
agent comprises a graft-modified wax, a low-molecular
weight polyethylene wax, a low-molecular weight
15 ethylene-propylene copolymer, a low-molecular weight
polypropylene wax or a paraffin wax.

19. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 13, wherein said release
20 agent comprises a polyolefin wax graft-modified with
an aromatic vinyl monomer, an unsaturated fatty acid
or an unsaturated fatty acid ester.

20. A toner for developing an electrostatic
25 image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-
modified polyolefin wax has an Mn of not more than

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





1 1,000, an Mw of not more than 2,500, an Mw/Mn of not
more than 30 and a melting point of from 60°C to
120°C.

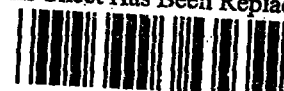
5 21. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-
modified polyolefin wax has an Mn of from 400 to 700,
an Mw of from 700 to 1,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than
2.0, and a melting point of from 60 to 100°C.

10 22. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-
modified polyolefin wax has a graft component in an
amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 100 parts by
15 weight based on 100 parts by weight of the polyolefin.

23. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-
modified polyolefin wax has a graft component in an
20 amount of from 1 part by weight to 50 parts by weight
based on 100 parts by weight of the polyolefin.

24. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-
25 modified polyolefin wax has a melt viscosity of from 1
cps to 250 cps at a temperature of 160°C.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





1 25. A toner for developing an electrostatic
image according to Claim 1, wherein;
said binder resin contains i) two kinds of
styrene-acrylate copolymers, a low-temperature
5 softening resin and a high-temperature softening
resin, and ii) a graft-modified polyolefin;
said low-temperature softening resin having a
weight average molecular weight (Mw) of from 5.0×10^3
to 3.0×10^4 , a ratio of Mw to a number average
10 molecular weight (Mn) (Mw/Mn) of not more than 3.0, a
flow-out point in a flow tester, of from 75°C to 90°C,
a softening point of from 80°C to 110°C, and a glass
transition point (Tg) of from 55°C to 65°C and being
contained in said binder resin in an amount of not
15 less than 65 wt.%; said high-temperature softening
resin having a weight average molecular weight (Mw) of
from 4.0×10^5 to 1.5×10^6 , a ratio of Mw to a number
average molecular weight (Mn) (Mw/Mn) of not more than
3.0, a flow-out point in a flow tester, of from 110°C
20 to 160°C, a softening point of from 150°C to 230°C,
and a glass transition point (Tg) of not less than
55°C; said low-temperature softening resin and said
high-temperature softening resin being in a proportion
ranging from 50:50 to 90:10 in weight proportion; and
25 said low-temperature softening resin being obtained by
solution polymerization, said high-temperature

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

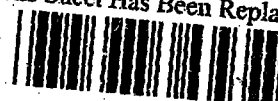




1 softening resin being obtained by suspension
polymerization, and the both being mixed in a solvent
capable of dissolving the both; and
said graft-modified polyolefin having a number
5 average molecular weight (M_n) of not more than 1.0×10^3 , a weight average molecular weight (M_w) of not
more than 2.5×10^3 , an M_w/M_n of not more than 3.0,
and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C .

10 26. A heat fixing method comprising;
imparting a toner image onto a recording
medium, wherein a toner that forms said toner image
comprises a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said
binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an
15 amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin,
and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by
GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble
matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number
average molecular weight ($\overline{M_w}/\overline{M_n}$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular
20 weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of
from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in
the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to
1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region
of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000,
25 provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150,
and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





1 SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area
of a molecular weight distribution curve of a
molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented
by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution
5 curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to
5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by
a straight line connecting the apex A corresponding to
the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B
corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a
10 molecular weight distribution curve by Sd; and
heat-fixing said toner image to said recording
medium by means of a heater element stationarily
supported and a pressure member that stands opposite
to said heat element in pressure contact and brings
15 said recording medium into close contact with said
heater element through a film interposed between them.

27. A heat fixing method according to Claim
26, wherein said heater element has a temperature of
20 from 100°C to 300°C.

28. A heat fixing method according to Claim
26, wherein said toner image is heated with a heater
element having a temperature of from 100°C to 300°C,
25 through a film having a thickness of from 1 μ m to 100
 μ m.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





1 29. A heat fixing method according to Claim
26, wherein said film has a heat resistance.

5 30. A heat fixing method according to Claim
29, wherein said film comprises a layer formed of a
polymer selected from the group consisting of
polyimide, polyester, polyethylene terephthalate, a
tetrafluoroethylene-perfluoroalkyl vinyl ether
copolymer, polytetrafluoroethylene and polyamide.

10 31. A heat fixing method according to Claim
29, wherein said film comprises a layer formed of a
metal.

15 32. A heat fixing method according to Claim
29, wherein said film has at least one of a release
layer and a low-resistance layer.

20 33. A heat fixing method according to Claim
29, wherein said film comprises a layer of a polyimide
film and a fluorine resin layer.

25 34. A heat fixing method according to Claim
33, wherein said fluorine resin layer comprises a
conductive material dispersed therein.

35. A heat fixing method according to Claim

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





1 34, wherein said fluorine resin layer comprises
polytetrafluoroethylene.

5 36. A heat fixing method according to Claim
26, wherein said film is brought into pressure contact
with said heater element by means of said pressure
member under a total pressure of from 4 kg to 20 kg.

10 37. A heat fixing method according to Claim
36, wherein said pressure member is provided with a
pressure roller having a rubber elastic layer.

15 38. A heat fixing method according to Claim
36, wherein said pressure member is provided with a
pressure roller having an elastic layer formed of
silicone rubber.

20 39. A heat fixing method according to Claim
26, wherein said heater element is heated by applying
to a resistance material a current with a pulse-like
waveform.

25 40. A heat fixing method according to Claim
26, wherein said heater element has a low heat
capacitance and has a linear structure.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





1 41. A heat fixing method according to Claim
26, wherein said heater element is provided with a
resistance material and a temperature sensor, and when
the heater element temperature detected by the
5 temperature sensor is T_1 , the surface temperature T_2
of the film opposed to said resistance material is
about 10°C to about 30°C lower than the temperature T_1
and the surface temperature T_3 of the film on the part
at which the film is peeled from a fixed toner image
10 is a temperature substantially equal to the
temperature T_2 .

 42. A heat fixing method according to Claim
26, wherein said toner comprises the toner according
15 to any one of Claims 2 to 25.

20

25

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



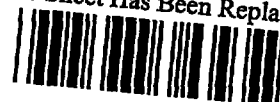
1 ABSTRACT OF THE DISCLOSURE

5 A toner for developing an electrostatic image,
comprises a binder resin and a colorant. Such binder
resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of
less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in
the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel
permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter,
has a weight average molecular weight/number average
molecular weight ($\overline{M}_w/\overline{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight
10 peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from
3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the
region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to
1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region
of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000,
15 provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150,
and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio
SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8.

20

25

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



113

6

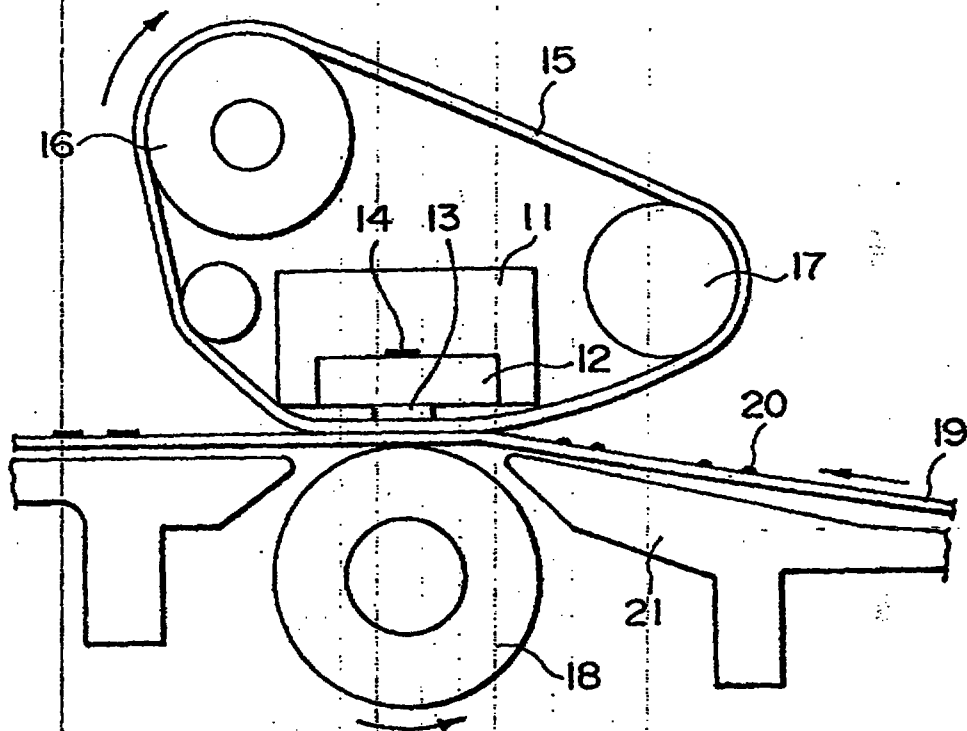


FIG. 1

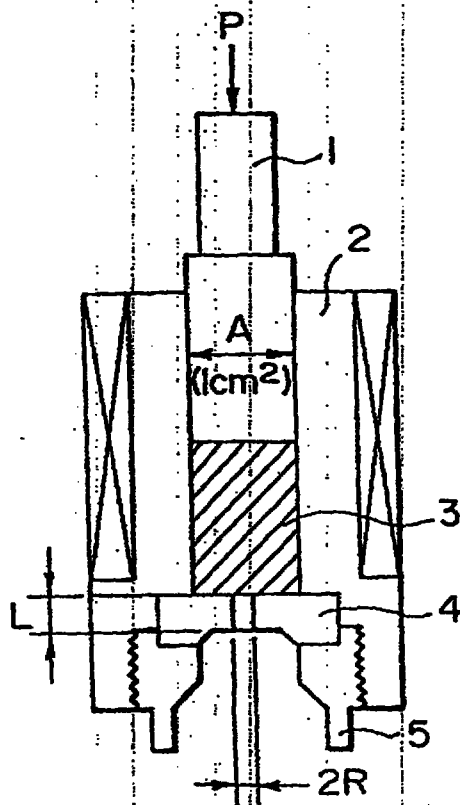
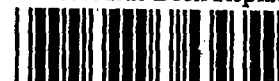


FIG. 3

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



213

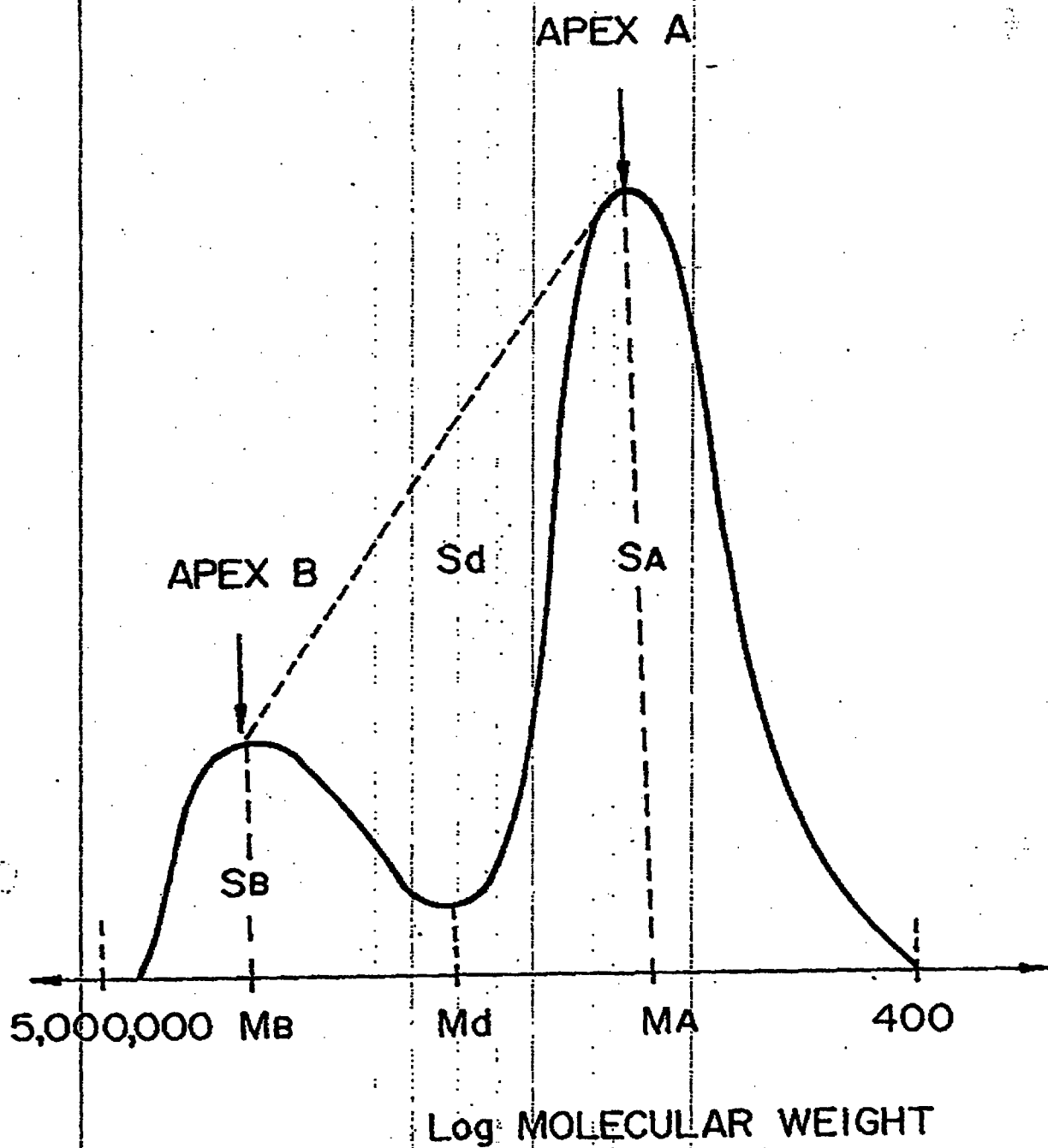
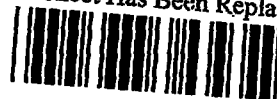


FIG. 2

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



313

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

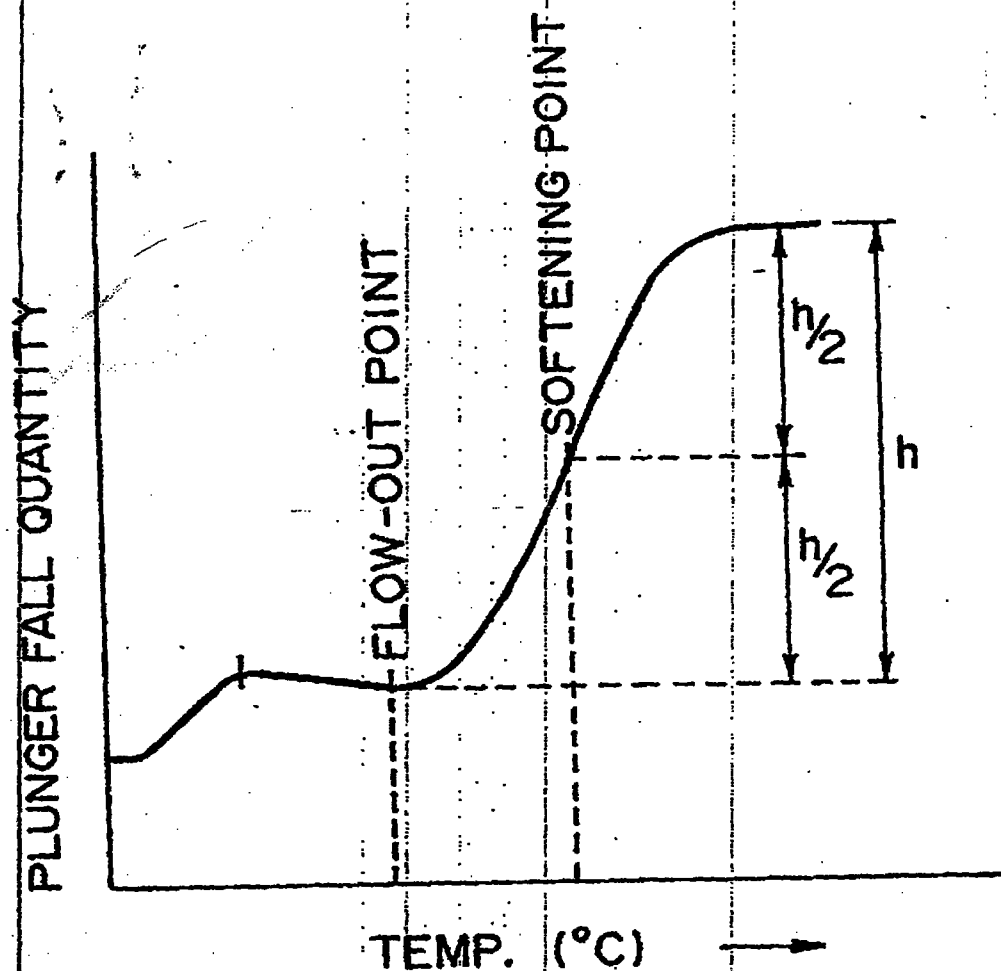
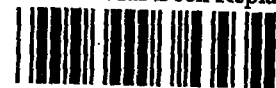
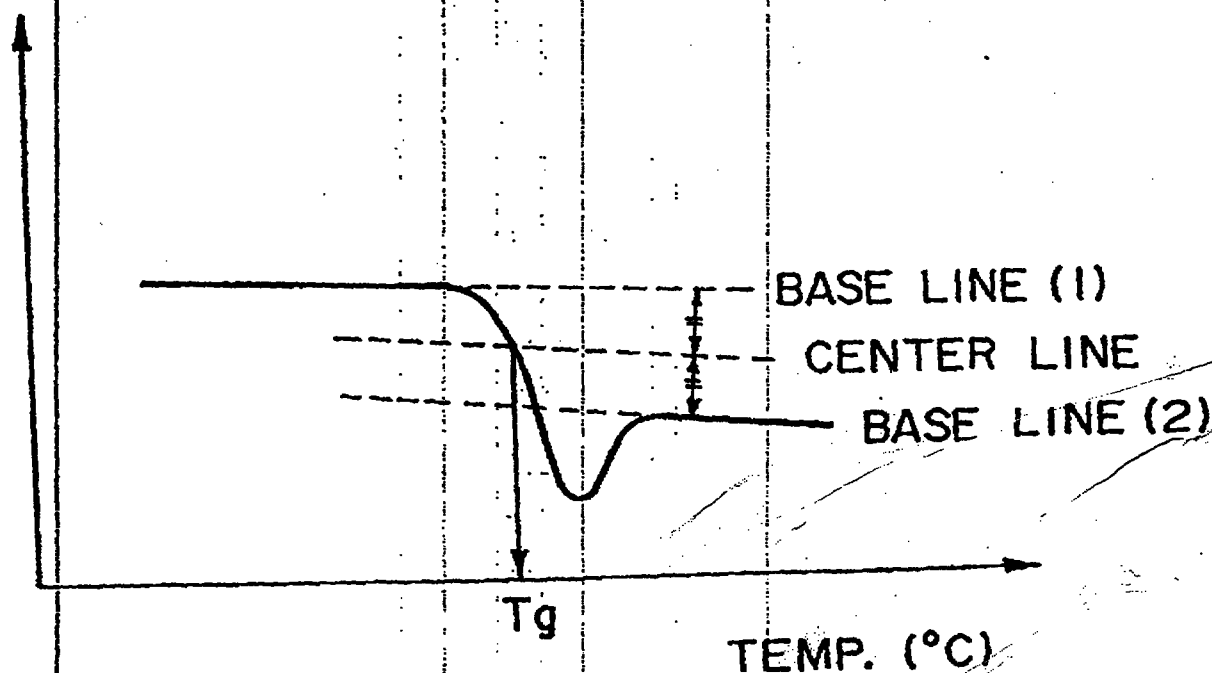


FIG. 4



REPLACED SHEETS		SG
☒ Description	: paged 1 to paged 93	
☒ Claim(s)	: paged 94 to paged 105	
☒ Drawing(s)	: paged 94 to paged 105	
☒ Abstract	: paged 106 to paged 106	

- 1 -

REPLACEMENT SHEETS		SG
☒ Description	: paged 1 to paged 93	
☒ Claim(s)	: paged 94 to paged 105	
☒ Drawing(s)	: paged 94 to paged 105	
☒ Abstract	: paged 106 to paged 106	

DATE OF RECEIPT 25/11/96

Electrostatic Image Developing Toner and

Fixing Method

960 6857-2

IPO's copy

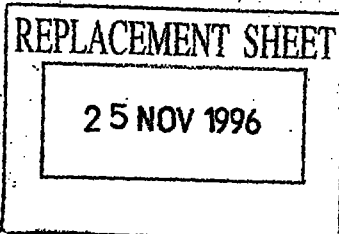
BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Field of the invention

The present invention relates to a toner for developing an electrostatic image, used in an image forming process such as electrophotography, electrostatic recording or magnetic recording, and a method of fixing the toner.

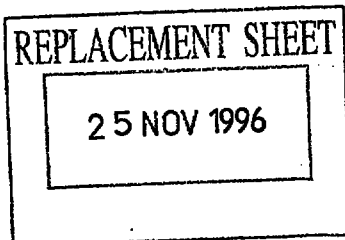
Related Background Art

A number of methods as disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 2,297,691, Japanese Patent Publication Nos. 42-23910 and No. 43-24748 and so forth are conventionally known as electrophotography. In general, copies are obtained by forming an electrostatic latent image on a photosensitive member by utilizing a photoconductive material, subsequently developing the latent image by the use of a toner, and transferring the toner image to a transfer medium such as paper if necessary, followed by fixing by the action of heat, pressure, heat-and-pressure, or solvent vapor. The toner that has not transferred to and has remained on the photosensitive member is cleaned by various means, and then the above process is repeated.



This Sheet Has Been Replaced





This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 2 -

In recent years, such a copying apparatus is not only used as a copying machine for office work to take copies of originals as commonly done, but also has begun to be used in the field of printers serving as outputs of computers and in the field of personal copying of private use.

Under such circumstances, the apparatus are severely sought to be made small-sized, lightweight and highly reliable. Copying machines have now been formed of more simple components in various respects. As a result, a high performance has become required for toners, and copying machines are no longer considered excellent unless an improvement in the performance of toners is achieved.

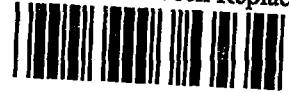
For example, various method or devices have been developed in relation to the step of fixing a toner image to a sheet such as paper. A method most commonly available at present is the pressure heat system using a heat roller.

The pressure heat system using a heat roller is a method of carrying out fixing by causing a toner image surface of an image-receiving sheet to pass the surface of a heat roller whose surface is formed of a material having releasability to toner while the former is brought into contact with the latter under application of a pressure. Since in this method the

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

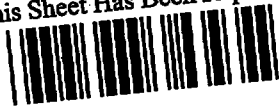


- 3 -

surface of the heat roller comes into contact with the toner image of the image-receiving sheet under application of a pressure, a very good thermal efficiency can be achieved when the toner image is melt-adhered onto the image-receiving sheet, so that fixing can be carried out rapidly. Thus, this method is very effective in a high-speed electrophotographic copying machines. In this method, however, since the surface of the heat roller comes into contact with the toner image under application of a pressure, part of the toner image may sometimes adhere and transfer to the surface of the fixing roller, which is re-transferred to the subsequent image-receiving sheet to cause an offset phenomenon, resulting in a contamination of the image-receiving sheet. Thus, it is considered to be one of essential conditions in the heat roller fixing system that no toner is adhered to the surface of the heat fixing roller.

For the purpose of not causing the toner to adhere to the surface of a fixing roller, a measure has been hitherto taken such that the roller surface is formed of a material such as silicon rubber or a fluorine resin, having an excellent releasability to toner, and, in order to prevent offset and to prevent fatigue of the roller surface, its surface is further covered with a thin film formed using a fluid having a

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



REPLACEMENT SHEET

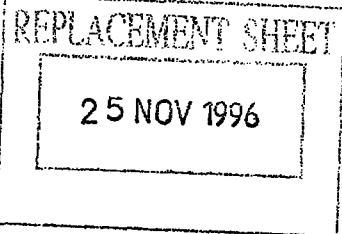
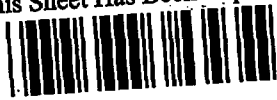
25 NOV 1996

- 4 -

good releasability as exemplified by silicone oil. However, this method, though effective in view of the prevention of the offset of toner, requires a device for feeding an anti-offset fluid, and hence has the problem that the fixing device becomes complicated.

This is in the opposite direction to the demand for small size and light weight. In some instances, the silicone oil is evaporated by heat to contaminate the interior of the machine. Now, based on the idea that the fluid for preventing offset should be fed from the the inside of a toner without use of any apparatus for feeding silicone oil, a method has been proposed in which a release agent such as a low-molecular polyethylene or a low-molecular polypropylene is added in the toner. Addition of such a release agent in a large quantity in order to attain a sufficient effect may cause filming to the photosensitive member or result in a contamination of the surface of a toner carrying member such as a carrier or a sleeve, so that toner images may be deteriorated to bring about a problem in practical use. Thus the release agent is added in the toner in such a small amount that may not cause the deterioration of toner images, where a releasing oil is fed in a little amount and a device by which the toner that may cause offset is cleaned using a member

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 5 -

such as a web of a wind-up type is used together.

However, taking account of the recent demand for small size, light weight and high reliability, it is necessary and preferred to remove such a supplementary device. Accordingly, no countermeasure can be completely taken unless the fixing performance and anti-offset of the toner are further improved. It is difficult to achieve the improvement unless binder resins for toners are further improved.

As a technique concerning the improvement of binder resins of toners, Japanese Patent Publication No. 51-23354, for example, proposes a toner in which a cross-linked polymer is used as a binder resin. According to the method disclosed therein, the toner is effective for the improvement in anti-offset and wind-around resistance, but on the other hand an increase in the degree of cross-linking results in an increase in the fixing temperature. Hence it is difficult to obtain a toner having a sufficiently low fixing temperature, a superiority in anti-offset and wind-around resistance, and a sufficient fixing performance. In general, in order to improve the fixing performance, the binder resin must be made to have a low molecular weight to lower its softening point. This conflicts with the measure for the improvement of anti-offset. Since the binder resin is

25 NOV 1996

- 6 -

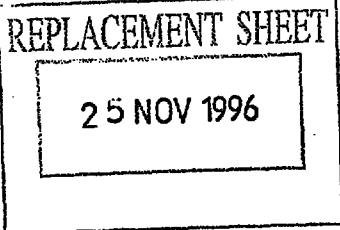
made to have a low softening point, the glass transition point of the resin is necessarily lowered to bring about an undesirable phenomenon that blocking of toner occurs during storage.

To cope with this problem, Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 55-158340 proposes a toner containing a binder resin comprised of a low-molecular weight polymer and a high-molecular weight polymer. This binder resin can achieve an improvement in respect of fixing performance, but can not still be satisfactory in respect of anti-offset. It is difficult for this toner to highly satisfy the anti-offset and fixing performance.

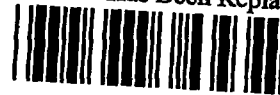
Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 58-203453 proposes a toner containing a binder resin comprised of a low-temperature softening resin and a high-temperature softening resin. This binder resin can achieve an improvement in respect of fixing performance, but can not still be satisfactory in respect of anti-offset. It is difficult for this toner to highly satisfy the anti-offset and fixing performance.

Japanese Patent Publication No. 60-20411 proposes a process for producing a resin composition comprising a polymer with a low degree of polymerization and a polymer with a high degree of





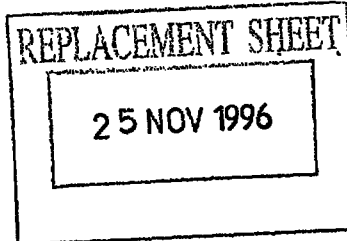
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 7 -

polymerization. When this resin is used as a binder resin for a toner, the resin tends to achieve an improvement in respect of fixing performance, but can not still be satisfactory in respect of anti-offset. Thus there is much room for improvement.

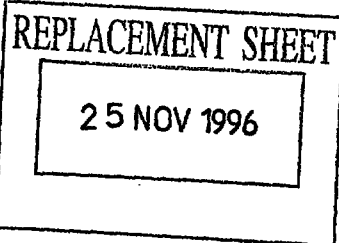
In relation to a toner containing a binder resin comprised of a blend of a low-molecular weight polymer and a cross-linked polymer, Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 58-86558, for example, proposes a toner comprising a low-molecular weight polymer and an insoluble infusible high-molecular weight polymer as main resin components. According to the method disclosed therein, the fixing performance and grindability tend to be improved. However, it is difficult to satisfy in a high performance both the anti-offset and the grindability, because the weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight (M_w/M_n) of the low-molecular weight polymer is as small as not more than 3.5 and the content of the insoluble infusible high-molecular weight polymer is as large as from 40 to 90 wt.%. Thus, it is very difficult from a practical viewpoint to give a toner well satisfying the fixing performance (in particular, in high-speed fixing), the offset resistance and the grindability unless a fixing assembly is provided with a device for feeding an anti-offset fluid. Moreover,



the toner must be heat-kneaded at a temperature far higher than that in usual instances or heat-kneaded at a high shear, because the insoluble infusible high-molecular weight polymer used in a larger amount turns to have a very high melt viscosity as a result of the heat-kneading carried out when the toner is prepared. As a result, in the instance where it is kneaded at a high temperature, the toner characteristics may be lowered because of thermal decomposition of other additives. In the instance where it is kneaded at a high shear, the molecules of the binder resin may be excessively cut. Thus, there is the problem that the desired anti-offset can be achieved with difficulty.

Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 60-166958 proposes a toner comprising a resin composition obtained by polymerizing monomers in the presence of a low-molecular poly(α -methylstyrene) having a number average molecular weight (M_n) of from 500 to 1,500.

In particular, this publication discloses that the number average molecular weight (M_n) may preferably be in the range of from 9,000 to 30,000. With an increase in M_n for the purpose of improving anti-offset, the fixing performance of the toner and the grindability at the time the toner is prepared may become more questionable from a practical viewpoint. Hence it is difficult to satisfy in a high performance



This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 9 -

both the anti-offset and the grindability. Thus, the toner having a poor grindability at the time the toner is prepared brings about a lowering of production efficiency, and also coarse toner particles tend to be included into the toner, undesirably resulting in black spots around a toner image.

Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 56-16144 proposes a toner containing a binder resin component having at least one maximum value in each region of a molecular weight of from 10^3 to 8×10^4 and a molecular weight of from 10^5 to 2×10^6 , in the molecular weight distribution measured by gel permeation chromatography (GPC). The toner, however, is sought to be further improved in fixing performance and anti-offset.

Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 63-223662 proposes a toner comprising a binder resin i) containing 10 to 60 wt.% of a THF(tetrahydrofuran)-insoluble matter, based on the binder resin, ii) having a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight (M_w/M_n) of ≥ 5 , a peak in the region of a molecular weight of from 2,000 to 10,000 and a peak or shoulder in the region of a molecular weight of from 15,000 to 100,000, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC of a THF-soluble matter, and iii) containing a component with a

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

- 10 -

molecular weight of not more than 10,000 in an amount of from 10 to 50 % by weight in the binder resin. In this instance, the resin can bring about a superiority in the grindability, fixing performance, filming or melt-adhesion resistance to a photosensitive member, image forming performance, and anti-offset (in particular, anti-offset at the high-temperature side), but is sought to achieve a further improvement in the anti-offset and fixing performance of the toner. In particular, it is difficult for this resin to cope with the severe condition that both the fixing performance at a low temperature and the anti-offset at a high temperature are required to be simultaneously satisfied.

In addition, it is very difficult to achieve both the properties concerned with fixing and the grindability at a high performance. In particular, the grindability required when toners are prepared is an important factor for the recent trend, in which toners are made to have a smaller particle diameter on account of the demand for a higher quality level, higher resolution and higher fine-line reproduction of copied images, and the improvement in the grindability is very important from the viewpoint of energy since a very large energy is required in the step of grinding.

The phenomenon that toner is melt-adhered to

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





25 NOV 1996

- 11 -

the inner wall of a grinding apparatus tends to occur in a toner having a good fixing performance, therefore bringing about a poor grinding efficiency. In the process of copying, there is the step of cleaning the toner having remained on a photosensitive member after transfer. Nowadays, from the viewpoint of making apparatus small-sized, light weight and highly reliable, it has become common to carry out cleaning by the use of a blade (i.e., blade cleaning). As photosensitive members have a longer lifetime, photosensitive member drums are made small-sized and systems are made high-speed, the melt-adhesion resistance and filming resistance to photosensitive members have been more strictly required in toners. In particular, amorphous silicon photosensitive members having been recently put into practical use are very highly durable, and also organic photoconductive photosensitive members (OPCs) have longer lifetimes. Hence, the performances required in toners have become higher.

In order to make apparatus small-sized, components must be so designed as to be successfully assembled. This makes small the space through which the air flows. In addition, heat sources for a fixing assembly and an exposure system come very near to a toner hopper or a cleaner. As a result, toner is

25 NOV 1996



exposed to a high-temperature atmosphere. Hence, no toner can any longer be put into practical use unless it has a better blocking resistance.

For example, the performances required in toners conflict with each other in almost all properties, as in fixing performance and blocking resistance, and yet it is increasingly sought and studied to satisfy all of them in a high performance. No satisfactory results, however, have been obtained.

As previously stated, as a method of fixing a visible image of toner to a recording medium, the heat-roll fixing system is widely used, in which a recording medium retaining thereon a toner visible image having not been fixed is heated while it is held and carried between a heat roller maintained at a given temperature and a pressure roller having an elastic layer and coming into pressure contact with the heat roller.

The heat-roll fixing, however, has the following problems that should be settled.

- (1) A waiting time (a time during which an image-forming operation is prohibited) is required until the heating roller reaches the given temperature.
- (2) The heating roller must be maintained at a proper temperature in order to prevent poor fixing caused by the variations of heat-roller temperatures



25 NOV 1996

- 13 -

that may occur when the recording medium is passed or because of other external factors, and also to prevent the phenomenon of offset of toner on the heating roller. This makes it necessary to make large the heat capacity of the heating roller or a heater element, which requires a large electric power.

(3) After the recording medium has been passed over the heating roller and discharged, the recording medium and the toner on the recording medium are slowly cooled because of a high temperature of the heating roller and also because of the atmospheric temperature having become higher, resulting in a state in which a high adhesion of the toner is maintained. Thus, there may often occur offset, or paper jam caused by the winding of the recording medium around the roller.

It is earnestly sought to realize a fixing method that has solved such problems, and may require only a short waiting time and a low consumption of electric power while achieving excellent performance of fixing a toner latent image to a recording medium and excellent anti-offset. Such a fixing method greatly depends on toner properties, and one of the important properties is the low-temperature fixing performance of toner.

As means for preventing occurrence of the

25 NOV 1996



offset phenomenon, the following methods are known as previously stated: (i) The method in which the fixing is carried out while applying a release agent such as silicone oil to the surface of a heating roller, (ii) the method in which a high-molecular weight polymer is used as a binder resin for toner, and (iii) the method in which a wax having release properties is incorporated in a toner.

In the method (i), however, the oil is heated to generate a smell, and also a device for feeding the oil becomes necessary to bring about the problem that the fixing device becomes complicated in structure.

In the method (ii), although the anti-offset of the toner can be improved, it is difficult to achieve the low-temperature fixing because of a concurrent rise of the melting temperature of the toner.

In respect of the method (iii), Japanese Patent Publications No. 52-3304, No. 52-3305, No. 57-52574, No. 53-155655 and No. 58-12580, for example, disclose toners comprising a styrene resin and a specific release agent.

Under existing circumstances, however, these toners can achieve an improvement particularly in regard to the high-temperature side offset phenomenon, but little improvement in respect of the low-temperature



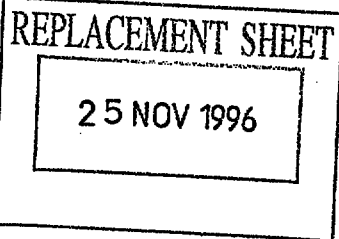
fixing performance. When such a release agent is used in a binder having a low-temperature melting properties, it is difficult for the release agent to have the releasing effect at a low temperature, tending to cause a low-temperature offset phenomenon. This causes a lowering of fixing performance, resulting in no achievement of low-temperature fixing performance.

To prevent the high-temperature side offset phenomenon, methods are known in which a high-molecular weight polymer is incorporated in a binder resin. The methods are disclosed, for example, in Japanese Patent Applications Laid-open No. 50-134652, No. 54-114245, No. 56-16144, No. 56-158340 and No. 58-203453.

Most of the toners used in these methods have achieved an improvement in the high-temperature side offset phenomenon, but are sought to be further improved in respect of the low-temperature fixing performance. On the other hand, the low-temperature fixing performance have been achieved to a certain extent in some of these methods. A further improvement, however, is sought in respect of development performance and blocking resistance.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

An object of the present invention is to



This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 16 -

provide a toner that has solved the above problems.

Another object of the present invention is to provide a toner that can be fixed at a low temperature and also has anti-offset in a broad temperature region of from low temperatures to high temperatures.

Still another object of the present invention is to provide a toner that may cause no melt-adhesion and filming to a photosensitive member in a high-speed system even after use for a long period of time.

A further object of the present invention is to provide a toner that has a superior blocking resistance and particularly can be well used even in a high-temperature atmosphere in a small-sized machine.

A still further object of the present invention is to provide a toner that can be continuously produced in a good efficiency because of no melt-adhesion of a ground product to the inner wall of an apparatus in the course of grinding.

According to the present invention, there is provided a toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprising a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight



25 NOV 1996

average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex A (apexA) corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B (apexB) corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by Sd.

According to another aspect of the present invention, there is provided a heat fixing method comprising;

imparting a toner image onto a recording medium, wherein a toner that forms said toner image comprises a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex A (apexA) corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B (apexB) corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by Sd; and

heat-fixing said toner image to said recording medium by means of a heater element stationarily



25 NOV 1996

supported and a pressure member that stands opposite to said heat element in pressure contact and brings said recording medium into close contact with said heater element through a film interposed between them.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is a schematic illustration of an example of a fixing device used for carrying out the fixing method of the present invention.

Fig. 2 illustrates a molecular weight distribution curve obtained by GPC.

Fig. 3 is a schematic illustration of an overhead-type flow tester.

Fig. 4 shows a flow tester flow-out curve (a plunger fall quantity-temperature curve).

Fig. 5 illustrates a DSC curve for determining T_g using a DSC (differential scanning calorimeter).

DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

The present inventors made intensive studies in order to achieve the objects stated above. As a result, they have discovered that the objects can be achieved when the binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% and also has a specific constitution in respect of the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC of a

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

- 20 -

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THF-soluble matter.

They have also discovered that the effect of the present invention becomes remarkable when the toner contains a release agent having a specific molecular weight and molecular weight distribution and also has a specific melting point.

They have further discovered that the objects can be better achieved particularly when the binder resin is prepared by mixing a low-molecular weight polymer and a high-molecular weight polymer in a solvent and thereafter removing the solvent.

In regard to the heat-fixing of a toner visible image to a recording medium, they have discovered that the toner is suitable for, besides conventional heat roll fixing devices, a heat fixing system wherein a toner visible image is heat-fixed to a recording medium by means of a heater element stationarily supported and a pressure member that stands opposite to said heater element in pressure contact and brings said recording medium into close contact with said heater element through a film interposed between them.

The binder resin that constitutes the above toner contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.%, and preferably not less than 5 wt.%, based on the binder resin. A THF-insoluble



25 NOV 1996

matter contained in an amount more than 10 wt.% can contribute an improvement in anti-offset but tends to result in a lowering of fixing performance, making it difficult to highly satisfy the both.

The binder resin, when its THF-soluble matter is measured by GPC, may preferably have a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by Sd. It is difficult to achieve the objects of the present

25 NOV 1996

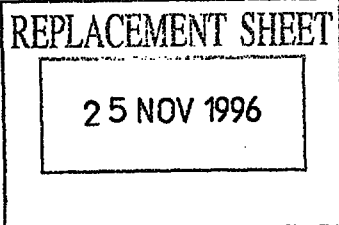


invention if the above conditions are not satisfied.

Fig. 2 shows the results from a GPC chromatogram.

The average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) should be not less than 18, preferably not less than 20, and more preferably in the range of from 25 to 60. If the $\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$ is less than 18, the fixing performance tends to be improved but the anti-offset is lowered.

The binder resin has one molecular weight peak and another molecular weight peak (MB and MA) in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000 and in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, respectively, and a molecular weight minimum in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150. In a preferred embodiment, the binder resin has one molecular weight peak and another molecular weight peak in the region of a molecular weight of from 5,000 to 15,000 and in the region of a molecular weight of from 450,000 to 900,000, respectively, and a molecular weight minimum in the region of a molecular weight of from 30,000 to 300,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 40 to 100. If it has the molecular weight minimum only in the region of the molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, the fixing performance can be



This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 23 -

improved but the anti-offset becomes clearly poor. If the molecular weight peak MA is less than 3,000, the blocking resistance becomes poor to tend to cause filming or melt-adhesion to a photosensitive member. On the other hand, if the MA is more than 20,000, the fixing performance may become poor. If the molecular weight peak MB is less than 380,000, the anti-offset becomes poor to tend to bring about a melt-adhered product in a device in the course of grinding. If it is more than 1,000,000, the fixing performance may become poor, and also the grindability tends to become poor, resulting in a lowering of productivity.

The molecular weight peak ratio MB/MA should be in the range of from 30 to 150, preferably from 30 to 120, and more preferably from 40 to 100.

If the MB/MA is less than 30 or more than 150, it becomes difficult to highly satisfy both the fixing performance and anti-offset.

In the case when two or more molecular weight peaks are present in the region of the molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, the molecular weight corresponding to the position of a higher or highest peak among the peaks in the GPC chromatogram is regarded as the MA.

Similarly, in the case when two or more molecular weight peaks are present in the region of



25 NOV 1996

the molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, the molecular weight corresponding to the position of a higher or highest peak among the peaks in the GPC chromatogram is regarded as the MB.

In the case when two or more molecular weight minimums are present in the region of the molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, the molecular weight corresponding to the position of a lower or lowest minimum among the molecular weight minimums in the GPC
10 chromatogram is regarded as the Md.

The molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd should be 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8, preferably 1 : 0.3 to 0.7 : 0.4 to 0.7, and more preferably 1 : 0.3 to 0.6 : 0.5 to 0.7. If the SB is less than 0.3, the anti-offset tends to be lowered, and if it is more than 0.8, the fixing performance and also the grindability tend to become poor. If the Sd is less than 0.35, the fixing performance and/or the anti-offset tend to be lowered, and if it is more than
20 0.8, the anti-offset tends to become poor.

The release agent preferably used in the toner of the present invention may preferably have a number average molecular weight of not more than 1,000, a weight average molecular weight of not more than
25 2,500, a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\overline{Mw}/\overline{Mn}$) of not more than 3

25 NOV 1996



and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C. In a preferred embodiment, the toner contains a release agent in an amount of from 0.1 wt.% to 20 wt.% based on the binder resin. In a more preferred embodiment, the release agent has a number average molecular weight of from 400 to 700, a weight average molecular weight of from 500 to 1,500, an $\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$ of not more than 2.5 and a melting point of from 60°C to 100°C. The release agent may more preferably be contained in an amount of from 1 wt.% to 10 wt.% based on the binder resin.

If the release agent used in the toner of the present invention does not satisfy the above conditions, e.g., if the melting point is higher than 120°C, the fixing performance is adversely affected, and if it is lower than 60°C, the anti-offset and the blocking resistance of the toner are adversely affected. If the release agent is contained in an amount more than 20 wt.%, the blocking resistance and fixing performance tend to be adversely affected when the toner is left in a high-temperature environment, and if it is less than 0.1 wt.%, the effect of preventing offset of toner tends to be insufficient.

The binder resin used in the toner of the
25 present invention may preferably be prepared by mixing
in a solvent a polymer A having a weight average



25 NOV 1996

molecular weight of from 5,000 to 30,000 and a polymer B having a weight average molecular weight of from 400,000 to 1,500,000 and thereafter removing the solvent. It may more preferably be prepared by mixing in a solvent a polymer A having a weight average molecular weight of from 7,000 to 25,000 and a polymer B having a weight average molecular weight of from 450,000 to 1,000,000 and thereafter removing the solvent. The solvent may be any of those capable of dissolving the polymer A and polymer B. It includes, for example, toluene, xylene and 2-propanol.

In preparing the binder resin used in the toner of the present invention, the polymer A may preferably be prepared by solution polymerization or suspension polymerization, and the polymer B by suspension polymerization or emulsion polymerization. More preferably the polymer A should be prepared by solution polymerization and the polymer B by suspension polymerization.

In order to prepare a uniformly dispersed binder resin, the binder resin may preferably be prepared by mixing the polymers A and B in the solvent and thereafter removing the solvent. It is difficult to obtain a binder resin in a uniformly dispersed state if prepared by a method wherein materials are heated, melted and mixed using a kneader. Such a

25 NOV 1996



method makes it difficult to satisfy both the fixing performance and anti-offset as aimed in the present invention, and tends to cause the formation of a melt-adhered product on a photosensitive member or the melt-adhesion of a ground product to the inner wall of a device in the course of grinding, thus being not preferred.

If the polymer A has a weight average molecular weight of less than 5,000, the anti-offset is lowered and the grindability at the time of the manufacture of toners is also lowered. If it has a weight average molecular weight of more than 30,000, the fixing performance is lowered.

If the polymer B has a weight average molecular weight of less than 400,000, the grindability tends to become poor, also undesirably causing a lowering of anti-offset, a lowering of blocking resistance and the formation of a melt-adhered product on a photosensitive member. If it has a weight average molecular weight of more than 1,500,000, the grindability is lowered.

It is difficult to achieve the objects of the present invention when the polymers A and B are each used alone as a binder resin for a toner. The objects can be better achieved by the method in which the polymers A and B are mixed in a solvent and thereafter



25 NOV 1996

the solvent is removed than the method in which they are melted and mixed. The polymer B makes it possible to preferably satisfy the mutually conflicting performances such as the anti-offset, the low-temperature fixing performance and the grindability at the time of the manufacture of toners, when the toner is prepared by the method of the present invention.

The THF-insoluble matter referred to in the present invention indicates the weight proportion of a polymer component that has become insoluble to THF (i.e., a giant molecule polymer or a cross-linked polymer) in a resin composition in the toner. The THF-insoluble matter is measured in the following way.

A toner sample is weighed in an amount of from 0.5 to 1.0 g (W_1 g), which is then put in a cylindrical filter paper (for example, No. 86R, available from Toyo Roshi K.K.) and set on a Soxhlet extractor. Extraction is carried out for 6 hours using from 100 to 200 ml of THF as a solvent, and the soluble component extracted by the use of the solvent is evaporated, followed by vacuum drying at 100°C for several hours. Then the THF-soluble resin component is weighed (W_2 g). The weight of insoluble components other than the resin components, such as a magnetic material and a pigment contained in the toner, is represented by W_3 g. The THF-insoluble matter is

25 NOV 1996



determined from the following expression.

$$\text{THF-insoluble matter (\%)} = W_1 - (W_3 + W_2) / (W_1 - W_3) \times 100$$

In the present invention, the molecular weight at the peak and/or shoulder on the chromatogram obtained by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) is/are measured under the following conditions.

Columns are stabilized in a heat chamber heated to 40°C. To the columns kept at this temperature, THF (tetrahydrofuran) as a solvent is flowed at a flow rate of 1 ml per minute, and from 50 to 200 μ l of a THF sample solution of a resin prepared to have a sample concentration of from 0.05 to 0.6 wt.% is injected thereinto to make measurement. In measuring the molecular weight of the sample, the molecular weight distribution ascribed to the sample is calculated from the relationship between the logarithmic value of a calibration curve prepared using several kinds of monodisperse polystyrene standard samples and the count number for flow-out time. As the standard polystyrene samples used for the preparation of the calibration curve, it is suitable to use, for example, samples with molecular weights of 6×10^2 , 2.1×10^3 , 4×10^3 , 1.75×10^4 , 5.1×10^4 , 1.1×10^5 , 3.9×10^5 , 8.6×10^5 , 2×10^6 and 4.48×10^6 , which are available from Pressure Chemical Co. or Toyo Soda Manufacturing Co., Ltd., and



25 NOV 1996

to use at least about 10 standard polystyrene samples. An RI (refractive index) detector is used as a detector.

Columns may preferably be used in combination of a plurality of commercially available polystyrene gel columns so that the regions of molecular weights of from 10^3 to 2×10^6 can be accurately measured. For example, they may preferably comprise a combination of μ -Styragel 500, 10^3 , 10^4 and 10^5 , available from Waters Co.; Shodex KF-80M or a combination of KF-802, 803, 804 and 805, available from Showa Denko K.K.; or a combination of TSKgel G1000H, G2000H, G2500H, G3000H, G4000H, G5000H, G6000H, G7000H and GMH, available from Toyo Soda Manufacturing Co., Ltd.

In the working examples as described later, the molecular weight distribution of the binder resin is measured under the following conditions.

Condition for measurement by GPC:

Apparatus: LC-GPC, 150C (Waters Co.)

Column: KF801-KF807 (Showdex Co.)

Column temperature: 28 to 30°C

Solvent: Tetrahydrofuran (THF)

The molecular weight distribution possessed by a sample is calculated from the relation between a logarithmic value, measured under the above



25 NOV 1996

- 31 -

conditions, of a calibration curve prepared using a polystyrene standard sample and the number of count measured under the above conditions.

The SA, SB and Sd of the molecular weight distribution curve in the binder resin used in the toner of the present invention are determined by calculating the weight ratios of a sample cut out from a chromatogram obtained by GPC and calculating the area ratios thereof.

In the working examples as described later, the molecular weight distribution of the release agent is measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) under the following conditions.

Apparatus: LC-GPC, 150C (Waters Co.)

Column: GMH6 (Toyo Soda Manufacturing Co., Ltd.), 60 cm

Column temperature: 140°C

Solvent: o-dichlorobenzene

The molecular weight distribution possessed by a sample is calculated from the relation between a logarithmic value measured under the above conditions, of a calibration curve prepared using a polyethylene standard sample and the number of count.

In the present invention, the melting point of the release agent is measured using a differential scanning calorimeter DSC-7 (manufactured by Perkin-

25 NOV 1996



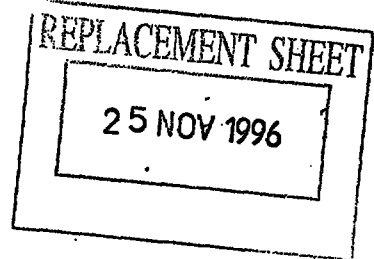
Elmer Co.) to determine an endothermic peak of the sample, which peak is regarded as a maximum melting peak value.

Fig. 5 shows an example of the endothermic peak in the DSC.

In the toner of the present invention, the binder resin may preferably contain i) two kinds of styrene-acrylate copolymers, a low-temperature softening resin and a high-temperature softening resin, and ii) a low-melting graft-modified polyolefin release agent.

The low-temperature softening resin may have an Mw of from 5.0×10^3 to 3.0×10^4 , and preferably from 5.0×10^3 to 2.0×10^4 , a ratio of Mw to Mn (Mw/Mn) of not more than 3.0, a flow-out point (herein the temperature at which the resin begins to flow out) in a flow tester, of from 75°C to 90°C, a softening point of from 80°C to 110°C, and a glass transition point (hereinafter "Tg") of from 55°C to 70°C, preferably from 55°C to 65°C. The high-temperature softening resin may have an Mw of from 4.0×10^5 to 1.5×10^6 , an Mw/Mn of not more than 3.0, a flow-out point of from 110°C to 160°C, a softening point of from 150°C to 230°C, and Tg of not less than 55°C.

25 If the Mw of the low-temperature softening resin is less than 5.0×10^3 , the blocking resistance



of the toner may be seriously deteriorated, the storage stability may be damaged, and the phenomenon of melt-adhesion of the toner to a photosensitive member may occur at the time of development to tend to adversely affect fixed images. If the M_w is more than 3.0×10^4 , it becomes difficult to achieve the desired low-temperature fixing performance, also resulting in an increase in the power consumption required for the fixing of the toner to a recording medium. When the M_w/M_n of the low-temperature softening resin is controlled to be not more than 3.0, the low-temperature fixing performance can be improved.

If the flow-out point of the low-temperature softening resin in a flow tester is lower than 75°C, the blocking resistance of the toner may be seriously deteriorated. On the other hand, if it is higher than 90°C, it becomes difficult to achieve the low-temperature fixing performance when used in combination with the high-temperature softening resin.

If the softening point of the low-temperature softening resin is lower than 80°C, an excessive melt-adhesion of the toner tends to occur in the step of heat fixing even when used in combination with the high-temperature softening resin, tending to bring
25 about the disadvantages that fixed-image surfaces become glossy, toner materials penetrate into or

25 NOV 1996



strike through a recording medium such as transfer paper, and images are blurred because of the spread of a molten toner. If the softening point is higher than 110°C, it becomes difficult to achieve the low-temperature fixing performance, also resulting in an increase in the power consumption required for the fixing of the toner to a recording medium.

Use of the specific low-temperature softening resin as described above enables achievement of a good low-temperature fixing performance.

On the other hand, as a result of intensive studies made by the present inventors on the offset phenomenon, the low-temperature softening resin was found to be preferably contained in an amount of not less than 50 wt.%, more preferably not less than 65 wt.%, and most preferably not less than 70 wt.%, based on the total weight of the binder resin, in order to bring out the low-temperature fixing performance attributable to the low-temperature softening resin component.

The high-temperature softening resin is sought to prevent the offset phenomenon by its addition in a very small amount.

It has been made clear that the resin used in combination with the above low-temperature softening resin for the purpose of preventing the offset



25 NOV 1996

phenomenon must be the high-temperature softening resin extremely different in molecular weight and melt viscosity characteristics from the low-temperature softening resin.

In the present invention, if the Mw of the high-temperature softening resin is less than 4.0×10^5 , the offset phenomenon tends to occur when this resin is used in combination with the low-temperature softening resin in such a proportion that enables low-temperature fixing. On the other hand, if it is more than 1.5×10^6 , the low-temperature fixing performance tends to be damaged.

If the flow-out temperature of the high-temperature softening resin in a flow tester is lower than 110°C or the softening point is lower than 150°C , the offset phenomenon tends to occur when this resin is used in combination with the low-temperature softening resin in such a proportion that enables low-temperature fixing. On the other hand, if the flow-out temperature is higher than 160°C or the softening point is higher than 230°C , the low-temperature fixing performance tends to be damaged.

The high-temperature softening resin may have a Tg of not lower than 55°C , preferably from 60°C to 70°C , and more preferably from 65 to 70°C . This is due to the fact that, when materials are melt-kneaded



25 NOV 1996

in the manufacture of toners, polymeric molecular chains are cut to decrease the molecular weight of the polymeric component, and hence, if the T_g is lower than 55°C , the melt-adhesion of the toner to a photosensitive member tends to occur at the time of development.

The low-temperature softening resin and high-temperature softening resin contained in the binder resin may be in a proportion ranging from 50:50 to 90:10, preferably 65:35 to 90:10, in wt. %.

If the amount of the low-temperature softening resin is less than 50 wt. % and also the amount of the high-temperature softening resin is more than 50 wt. %, it becomes difficult to achieve the low-temperature fixing performance. On the other hand, if the amount of the low-temperature softening resin is more than 90 wt. % and the amount of the high-temperature softening resin is less than 10 wt. %, the offset phenomenon tends to occur to adversely affect fixed images.

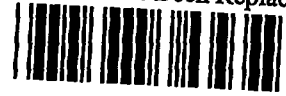
If the amount of the low-temperature softening resin is more than 50 wt. %, the grindability at the time the toner is prepared tends to be seriously lowered to lower the production efficiency of the toner.

An additional feature in the constitution of the toner of the present invention is that the

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 37 -

low-temperature softening resin of the binder resin is obtained by solution polymerization, and the high-temperature softening resin by suspension polymerization, and that the both are mixed in a solvent capable of dissolving the both.

Suspension polymerization and emulsion polymerization are available in order to obtain the high-temperature softening resin having the molecular weight distribution and melt viscosity characteristics as described above. In the emulsion polymerization, however, it is difficult to prevent an emulsifying agent from remaining, resulting in a lowering of toner characteristics.

It is preferred for the low-temperature softening resin to be synthesized by solution polymerization taking account of its solution mixture with the high-temperature softening resin, carried out after completion of the polymerization.

The mixing of the low-temperature softening resin and the high-temperature softening resin is carried out by solution mixing. Other mixing methods can not achieve uniform mixture to adversely affect toner characteristics.

The solution mixing makes it possible to remove remaining monomers when the step of removing the solvent is taken.

The melting characteristics of the binder resin can be measured using an overhead-type flow tester as illustrated in Fig. 3 (Shimadzu Flow Tester CFT-500 Type). In the first place, about 1.0 g of a sample 3 molded using a pressure molder is extruded from a nozzle 4 of 1 mm in diameter and 1 mm in length under application of a load of 20 kgf using a plunger 1 at a temperature rising rate of 5.0°C/min, during which the fall quantity of the plunger of the flow tester is measured.

Here, when the height of an S-shaped curve in the plunger fall quantity-temperature curve of the flow tester (see the flow tester flow-out curve shown in Fig. 4) is represented by "h", the temperature at a point of h/2 is regarded as the softening point and the temperature at which the sample begins to flow out is regarded as the flow-out point or temperature.

The Tg is measured in the following way: Using a DSC curve obtained at the time of the second temperature rise, the temperature corresponding to the position of the point at which, as shown in Fig. 5, the center line between a base line (1) before the endothermic peak and a base line (2) after the endothermic peak intersects the rising curve is regarded as the Tg.

The Tg in the present invention is measured



25 NOV 1996

using a differential scanning calorimeter DSC-7 (manufactured by Perkin-Elmer Co.), at a temperature rising rate of 10°C/min and according to ASTM (D3418-82).

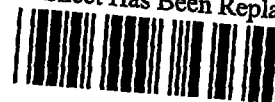
The resin composition in the toner of the present invention may preferably be those obtained by polymerizing at least one kind of monomers selected from styrenes, acrylic acids, methacrylic acids and derivatives thereof. These are preferable in view of development properties and triboelectric properties. As for examples of monomers that can be used, the styrenes include styrene, α -methylstyrene, vinyltoluene, and chlorostyrene. The acrylic acids, methacrylic acids and derivatives thereof include acrylic acid and acrylates such as methyl acrylate, ethyl acrylate, propyl acrylate, butyl acrylate, octyl acrylate, 2-ethylhexyl acrylate, n-tetradecyl acrylate, n-hexadecyl acrylate, lauryl acrylate, cyclohexyl acrylate, diethylaminoethyl acrylate, and dimethylaminoethyl acrylate; methacrylic acid and methacrylates such as methyl methacrylate, ethyl methacrylate, propyl methacrylate, butyl methacrylate, amyl methacrylate, hexyl methacrylate, 2-ethylhexyl methacrylate, octyl methacrylate, decyl methacrylate, dodecyl methacrylate, lauryl methacrylate, cyclohexyl methacrylate, phenyl methacrylate, 2-hydroxyethyl

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

- 40 -

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



methacrylate, 2-hydroxypropyl methacrylate, dimethylaminoethyl methacrylate, glycidyl methacrylate, and stearyl methacrylate.

Besides the above monomers, other monomers may be used in a small amount so long as the objects of the present invention can be achieved, which include, for example, acrylonitrile, 2-vinylpyridine, 4-vinylpyridine, vinylcarbazole, vinyl methyl ether, butadiene, isoprene, maleic anhydride, maleic acid, maleic acid monoesters, maleic acid diesters, and vinyl acetate.

A cross-linking agent may be used in the toner of the present invention, and a bifunctional cross-linking agent can be used, which includes, divinylbenzene, bis(4-acryloxy-polyethoxyphenyl) propane, ethylene glycol diacrylate, 1,3-butylene glycol diacrylate, 1,4-butanediol diacrylate, 1,5-pentanediol diacrylate, 1,6-hexanediol diacrylate, neopentyl glycol diacrylate, diethylene glycol diacrylate, triethylene glycol diacrylate, tetraethylene glycol diacrylate, diacrylates of polyethylene glycol #200, #400 and #600, respectively, dipropylene glycol diacrylate, polypropylene glycol diacrylate, polyester type diacrylate (MANDA, available from Nippon Kayaku Co., Ltd.), and those in which the acrylate units of the



25 NOV. 1996

above acrylate type cross-linking agents have been respectively replaced with methacrylate units.

A polyfunctional cross-linking agent can also be used, which includes pentaerythritol triacrylate, trimethylolethane triacrylate, trimethylolpropane triacrylate, tetramethylolmethane tetraacrylate, oligoester acrylate and methacrylate thereof, 2,2-bis(4-methacryloxy, polyethoxyphenyl)propane, diallyl phthalate, triallyl cyanurate, triallyl isocyanurate, triallyl isocyanurate, triallyl trimellitate, and diaryl chlorendate.

These cross-linking agents may preferably be not incorporated so that the THF-insoluble matter is controlled to be less than 10 wt.%. In the case when the cross-linking agent is incorporated, it should be used in an amount of less than 1 wt.%, preferably not more than 0.5 wt.%, and more preferably not more than 0.2 wt.%.

The binder resin used in the toner of the present invention is synthesized from monomers in the presence or absence of the cross-linking agent and also with use of a polymerization initiator.

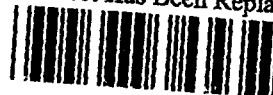
The polymerization initiator may include di-t-butyl peroxide, benzoyl peroxide, lauroyl peroxide, t-butyl peroxy laurate, 2,2'-azobisisobutyronitrile, 1,1-bis(t-butylperoxy)-3,3,5-trimethylcyclohexane,

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

- 42 -

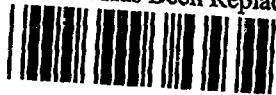
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



1,1-bis(t-butylperoxy)cyclohexane, 1,1-bis(t-butylperoxycarbonyl)cyclohexane, 2,2-bis(t-butylperoxy)octane, n-butyl-4,4-bis(t-butylperoxy)valylate, 2,2-bis(t-butylperoxy)butane, 1,3-bis(t-butylperoxy-isopropyl)benzene, 2,5-dimethyl-2,5-di(t-butylperoxy)hexane, 2,5-dimethyl-2,5-di(t-butylperoxy)hexyne-3, 2,5-dimethyl-2,5-di(benzoylperoxy)hexane, di-t-butylperoxyisophthalate, 2,2-bis(4,4-di-t-butylperoxycyclohexyl)propane, di-t-butylperoxy- α -methylsuccinate, di-t-butylperoxydimethylglutarate, di-t-butylperoxyhexahydroterephthalate, di-t-butylperoxyazelate, 2,5-diemthyl-2,5-di(t-butylperoxy)hexane, diethylene glycol-bis(t-butylperoxycarbonate), di-t-butylperoxytrimethyladipate, tris(t-butylperoxy)triazine, and vinyl tris(t-butylperoxy)silane.

The above polymerization initiators may be used alone or by mixture taking account of the amount, the polymerization temperature and the half-life period.

In the toner used in the present invention, at least one kind of a release agent having a number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_n$) of not more than 1.0×10^3 , a weight average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w$) of not more than 2.5×10^3 , an $\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$ of not more than 3.0, and a melting point (mp) of from 60°C to 120°C. The release agent may preferably be used in amount of from



25 NOV 1996

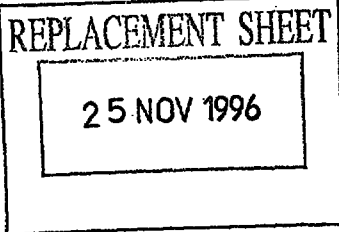
- 43 -

0.1 to 20 wt.%, and preferably from 1 to 10 wt.%, based on the binder resin.

Release agents preferably used in the toner of the present invention include, for example, paraffin wax, a low-molecular weight polyethylene wax, a low-molecular weight ethylene-propylene copolymer, a low-molecular weight polypropylene wax, and a polyolefin wax graft-modified with an aromatic vinyl monomer such as styrene and styrene derivatives, an unsaturated fatty acid or an unsaturated fatty acid ester. Of these, the graft-modified polyolefin wax is particularly preferred from the viewpoint of the advantages that the lifetime of developers and of machines such as copying machines making use of the developers can be elongated and the machines can be made maintenance-free.

The graft-modified polyolefin wax may have an Mn of not more than 1.0×10^3 , and preferably from 400 to 700, an Mw of not more than 2.5×10^3 , and preferably from 700 to 1,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 3.0, and preferably not more than 2.0, and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C, and preferably from 60°C to 100°C.

Use of this release agent makes it possible to carry out the heat fixing of the toner to a recording medium under fixing conditions of low temperatures



This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 44 -

without causing offset, and thus to achieve a lower power consumption.

Intensive studies made by the present inventors have revealed that what is required is a release agent which renders good release properties at a low temperature with respect to the low-temperature melting binder resin which enables the low-temperature fixing, that the temperature at which the release agent renders release properties correlates with the melting point of the release agent, and that a release agent having a lower melting point is more advantageous for the low-temperature fixing. When, however, a release agent with a low melting point is used, the release agent makes poor the blocking resistance of a toner and has an ill influence that the filming of toner to a carrier occurs when the product is used in two-component type development. Accordingly, in the present invention, the release agent is made to have the molecular weight distribution which is relatively sharp as described above, so that the blocking resistance can be improved, the release agent can render release properties at a lower temperature, and the good performance without causing the offset phenomenon can be obtained.

However, although the low-temperature fixing



25 NOV 1996

can be achieved to a certain extent when the release agent with a low melting point and binder resin as described above are used in combination, it is technically difficult to disperse the release agent in the mixed resin comprised of the low-temperature softening resin and the high-temperature softening resin. An insufficient dispersion adversely affects the developing performance of toner.

Now, the present inventors made further intensive studies to have discovered that the above problems can be eliminated and a good development performance and further low-temperature fixing performance can be achieved when the low-melting polyolefin wax is graft-modified in order to improve the dispersion of the release agent in the binder resin as described above.

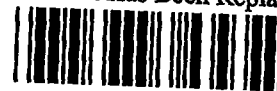
The binder resin in the toner of the present invention may preferably be obtained by mixing the low-temperature softening resin and the high-temperature softening resin, and both the resins may preferably be binder resins comprising the same components.

The low-melting graft-modified polyolefin release agent used in the present invention may include a polyolefin wax graft-modified with an aromatic vinyl monomer such as styrene and styrene derivatives, or an unsaturated fatty acid or an

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 46 -

unsaturated fatty acid ester.

The polyolefin wax may include polyethylene waxes; homopolymers of α -olefins such as propylene, 1-butene, 1-hexene, 1-decene, and 4-methyl-1-pentene; copolymers of two or more kinds of α -olefins; and copolymers of ethylene with an α -olefin. It may further include oxides of polyolefins.

The unsaturated fatty acid or unsaturated fatty acid ester used for synthesizing the graft-modified polyolefin may include methacrylic acid; methacrylates such as methyl methacrylate, ethyl methacrylate, propyl methacrylate, n-butyl methacrylate, isobutyl methacrylate, n-octyl methacrylate, 2-ethylhexyl methacrylate, lauryl methacrylate, stearyl methacrylate, dodecyl methacrylate, phenyl methacrylate, dimethylaminoethyl methacrylate, diethylaminoethyl methacrylate, 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl methacrylate, and glycidyl methacrylate; acrylic acid; acrylates such as methyl acrylate, ethyl acrylate, propyl acrylate, n-butyl acrylate, isobutyl acrylate, n-octyl acrylate, lauryl acrylate, stearyl acrylate, dodecyl acrylate, 2-ethylhexyl acrylate, phenyl acrylate, 2-chloroethyl acrylate, 2-hydroxyethyl acrylate, cyclohexyl acrylate, dimethylaminoethyl acrylate, diethylaminoethyl acrylate,

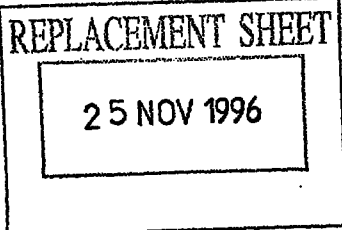


25 NOV 1996

dibutylaminoethyl acrylate, 2-ethoxy acrylate, and 1,4-butanediol diacrylate; maleic acid, fumaric acid, itaconic acid, citraconic acid, and unsaturated dibasic acid esters such as monoethyl maleate, diethyl maleate, monopropyl maleate, dipropyl maleate, monobutyl maleate, dibutyl maleate, di-2-ethylhexyl maleate, monoethyl fumarate, diethyl fumarate, dibutyl fumarate, di-2-ethylhexyl fumarate, monoethyl itaconate, diethyl itaconate, monoethyl citraconate, and diethyl citraconate. These can be used alone or in combination of two or more kinds.

The aromatic vinyl monomer may include styrene, o-methylstyrene, m-methylstyrene, p-methylstyrene, α -methylstyrene, 2,4-dimethylstyrene, p-ethylstyrene, p-n-butylstyrene, p-tert-butylstyrene, p-n-dodecylstyrene, p-phenylstyrene, and p-chlorostyrene. These can be used alone or in combination of two or more kinds..

The polyolefin can be graft-modified using conventionally known methods. For example, a reaction of the polyolefin with the aromatic vinyl monomer and the unsaturated fatty acid or unsaturated fatty acid ester which are in a molten state or dissolved in a solvent may be conducted by heating in the atmosphere or under application of pressure and in the presence of a radical initiator. A graft-modified polyolefin



This Sheet Has Been Replaced



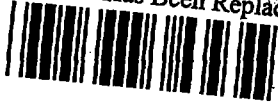
- 48 -

can be thus obtained. The grafting using the aromatic vinyl monomer and the unsaturated fatty acid or unsaturated fatty acid ester may be carried out using both at the same time or may be carried out using them separately.

The initiator used in the grafting reaction may include benzoyl peroxide, dichlorobenzoyl peroxide, di-tert-butyl peroxide, lauroyl peroxide, tert-butyl perphenyl acetate, cumine pivalate, azobisisobutyronitrile, dimethylazoisobutyrate, and dicumyl peroxide.

As to the proportion of the grafting agent to the polyolefin, the former may preferably be in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 100 parts by weight, and more preferably from 1 part by weight to 50 parts by weight, based on 100 parts by weight of the latter. An amount less than 0.1 part by weight can not bring about little effect of grafting, and an amount more than 100 parts by weight may result in loss of advantageous properties inherent in the polyolefin.

The aromatic vinyl monomer and the unsaturated fatty acid or unsaturated fatty acid ester may be used preferably in a weight ratio of from 95:5 to 5:95, and more preferably from 80:20 to 20:80. An excessive amount for the unsaturated fatty acid or unsaturated



25 NOV 1996

fatty acid ester tends to result in a decrease in the releasing effect inherent in the polyolefin. An excessive amount for the aromatic vinyl monomer can not so much bring about an improvement in the dispersibility of the polyolefin in the toner.

The graft-modified polyolefin used in the present invention may preferably be added in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 20 parts by weight, and more preferably from 0.5 part by weight to 10 parts by weight, based on 100 parts by weight of the binder resin. An amount less than 0.1 part by weight makes it difficult to bring about a sufficient releasing effect, and an amount more than 20 parts by weight tends to result in a lowering of the blocking resistance of the toner.

The graft-modified polyolefin used in the present invention may preferably have a melt viscosity in the range of from 1 to 250 cps (centipoise) at 160°C. A melt viscosity less than 1 cps tends to cause the blocking of toner. A melt viscosity more than 250 cps makes it hard for the modified polyolefin to bleed from the toner and makes it hard for the releasing effect to be exhibited. In the fixing method of the present invention, it is preferred that in general a releasable component having a lower melt viscosity is used when a lower fixing temperature is



selected.

The melt viscosity referred to in the present invention is based on a value measured with a Brookfield type viscometer.

The toner used in the present invention may contain at least one kind of a release agent having a melting point of higher than 120°C so long as used in such an amount that may not adversely affect the fixing performance of the toner.

The toner of the present invention may contain a charge control agent. Conventionally known positive or negative charge control agents can be used as the charge control agent. The charge control agent may include the following:

(1) Those capable of controlling the toner to have positive charge may include the following materials: Nigrosine, azine dyes containing an alkyl group having 2 to 16 carbon atoms (Japanese Patent Publication No. 42-1627), basic dyes as exemplified by C.I. Basic Yellow 2 (C.I.41000), C.I. Basic Yellow 3, C.I. Basic Red 1 (C.I.45160), C.I. Basic Red 9 (C.I.42500), C.I. Basic Violet 1 (C.I.42535), C.I. Basic Violet 3 (C.I.42555), C.I. Basic Violet 10 (C.I.45170), C.I. Basic Violet 14 (C.I.42510), C.I. Basic Blue 1 (C.I.42025), C.I. Basic Blue 3 (C.I.51005), C.I. Basic Blue 5 (C.I.42140), C.I. Basic Blue 7 (C.I.42595),



25 NOV 1996

C.I. Basic Blue 9 (C.I.52015), C.I. Basic Blue 24 (C.I.52030), C.I. Basic Blue 25 (C.I.52025), C.I. Basic Blue 26 (C.I.44025), C.I. Basic Green 1 (C.I.42040) and C.I. Basic Green 4 (C.I.42000), lake pigments of these basic dyes (laking agents are exemplified by tungstophosphoric acid, molybdophosphoric acid, tungstomolybdophosphoric acid, tannic acid, lauric acid, gallic acid, ferricyanides, and ferrocyanides), C.I. Solvent black 3 (C.I.26150), Hanza Yellow G (C.I.11680), C.I. Mordant Black 11, C.I. Pigment Black 1, benzoylmethyl-hexadecylammonium chloride, decyl-trimethylammonium chloride, dialkyltin compounds such as dibutyltin and dioctyltin, metal salts of higher fatty acids, inorganic fine powders such as zinc oxide, metal complexes of EDTA or acetylacetone, and polyamine resins such as vinyl polymers containing an amino group and condensed polymers containing an amino group. Nigrosine, metals salts of higher fatty acids, and vinyl polymers containing an amino group are particularly preferred from the viewpoint of dispersibility.

(2) Those capable of controlling the toner to have negative charge may include the following materials: Metal compounds of monoazo dyes, as disclosed in Japanese Patent Publications No. 41-20153, No. 42-27596, No. 44-6397 and No. 45-26478, nitramines and



25 NOV 1996

salts thereof, as disclosed in Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 50-133338, dyes or pigments such as C.I.14645, metal-containing compounds formed by the union of Zn, Al, Co, Cr or Fe with salicylic acid, naphthoic acid or dicarboxylic acid, as disclosed in Japanese Patent Publications No. 55-42752, No. 58-41508, No. 58-7384 and No. 59-7384, sulfonated copper phthalocyanine pigments, styrene oligomers into which a nitro group or halogen has been introduced, and chlorinated paraffins. Metal-containing compounds of monoazo dyes, and metal-containing compounds of salicylic acid, alkylsalicylic acid, naphthoic acid or dicarboxylic acid are particularly preferred from the viewpoint of dispersibility.

The toner of the present invention may also be optionally incorporated with additives to obtain good results. The additives may include lubricants such as Teflon, zinc stearate and polyvinylidene fluoride (in particular, polyvinylidene fluoride is preferred); abrasives such as cerium oxide, silicon carbide and strontium titanate (in particular, strontium titanate is preferred); fluidity-providing agents such as colloidal silica and aluminum oxide (in particular, hydrophobic colloidal silica is preferred); anti-caking agents; and conductivity-providing agents such

25 NOV 1996

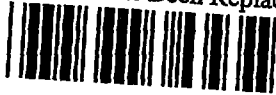


as carbon black, zinc oxide, antimony oxide and tin oxide. It is also possible to use as a developability improver, a small amount of white fine particles and black fine particles having the polarity opposite to the charge polarity of the toner.

The toner of the present invention may also be use in the form of a mixture with carrier powder, when used as a two-component type developer. In this instance, the toner and the carrier powder may be mixed in such a ratio that gives a toner concentration of from 0.1 to 50 wt.%, preferably from 0.5 to 10 wt.%, and more preferably from 3 to 5 wt.%.

As the carrier powder usable in the present invention, it is possible to use known materials. They include, for example, powders having magnetic properties, such as iron powder, ferrite powder and nickle powder, glass beads, and glass beads whose surfaces have been treated with a resin such as a fluorine resin or a silicone resin.

The toner of the present invention may further contain a magnetic material so that it can be used as a magnetic toner. In this instance the magnetic material serves as a coloring agent at the same time. The magnetic material contained in the toner may include iron oxides such as magnetite, hematite and ferrite, or compounds of divalent metals with iron



25 NOV 1996

oxide; metals such as iron, cobalt and nickel, or alloys of any of these metals with any of metals such as aluminum, cobalt, copper, lead, magnesium, tin, zinc, antimony, beryllium, bismuth, cadmium, calcium, manganese, selenium, titanium, tungsten and vanadium, and mixture of any of these.

These ferromagnetic materials may preferably be those having an average particle diameter of from 0.1 μm to 2 μm , and more preferably from 0.1 μm to 0.5 μm . Spherical materials are particularly preferred. The magnetic material may be contained in the magnetic toner in an amount of from about 20 to 200 parts by weight based on 100 parts by weight of the resin component, and particularly preferably from 40 to 180 parts by weight based on 100 parts by weight of the resin component.

The toner of the present invention may also optionally contain a colorant.

As the colorant used in the toner of the present invention, a pigment or a dye may be used. The pigment may include carbon black, Aniline Black, acetyrene black, Naphtol Yellow, Hanza Yellow, Rhodamine Lake, Alizarin Lake, red iron oxide, Phthalocyanine Blue and Indanthrene Blue. The pigment is used in such an amount that is necessary and sufficient for maintaining the optical density of

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

- 55 -

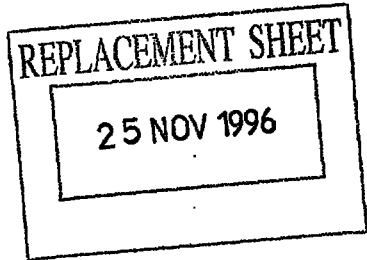
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



fixed images, and should be added preferably in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 20 parts by weight, and more preferably from 2 to 10 parts by weight, based on 100 parts by weight of the resin.

The dye may include azo dyes, anthraquinone dyes, xanthene dyes and methine dyes. The dye should be added preferably in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 20 parts by weight, and more preferably from 0.3 part by weight to 3 parts by weight, based on 100 parts by weight of the resin.

The toner according to the present invention for developing an electrostatic latent image may be prepared by a method comprising thoroughly mixing the resin composition according to the present invention, the release agent and the charge control agent optionally together with the magnetic material, the pigment or dye as a coloring agent and other additives by means of a mixing machine such as a ball mill, thereafter melting and kneading the mixture by the use of a heat kneading machine such as a heating roll, a kneader or an extruder so that resins are mutually compatibilized and the pigment or dye is dispersed and dissolved therein, and cooling the resulting product to effect solidification, followed by crushing, pulverization and then strict classification to give a toner with an average particle diameter of from 3 μ m



to 20 μm .

The present invention also relates to a method of heat-fixing a toner visible image, wherein the method comprises heat-fixing the toner image formed using the toner having the characteristic features as described above, to a recording medium by means of a heater element stationarily supported and a pressure member that stands opposite to said heater element in pressure contact and brings said recording medium into close contact with said heater element through a film interposed between them.

Fig. 1 illustrates the construction of the fixing device used in the present invention. The fixing method of the present invention is by no means limited only to the method embodied in it.

In the fixing device shown in Fig. 1, a heater element 11 has a smaller heat capacity than conventional heat rolls, and has a linear heating part. The heating part may preferably be made to have a maximum temperature of from 100°C to 300°C.

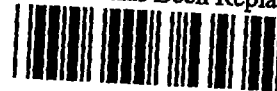
A film 15 is interposed between the heater element 11 and a pressure member 18, and may preferably comprise a heat-resistant sheet of from 1 to 100 μm in thickness. Heat-resistant sheets that can be used therefor may include sheets of polymers having high heat-resistance, such as polyester, PET

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

- 57 -

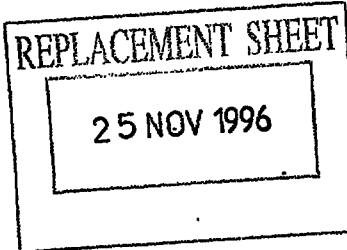
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



(polyethylene terephthalate), PFA (a tetrafluoroethylene/perfluoroalkyl vinyl ether copolymer), PTFE (polytetrafluoroethylene), polyimide and polyamide, sheets of metals such as aluminum, and laminate sheets comprised of a metal sheet and a polymer sheet.

In a preferred constitution of the film, these heat-resistant sheets have a release layer and/or a low-resistance layer.

The numeral 11 denotes a low heat capacitance linear heater element stationarily supported in the fixing device. An example thereof comprises an alumina substrate 12 of 1.0 mm in thickness, 10 mm in width and 240 mm in longitudinal length and a resistance material 13 coated thereon to have a width of 1.0 mm, which is electrified from the both ends in the longitudinal direction. The electricity is applied under variations of pulse widths of the pulses corresponding with the desired temperatures and energy emission quantities which are controlled by a temperature sensor 14, in the pulse-like waveform with a period of 20 msec of DC 100V. The pulse widths range approximately from 0.5 msec to 5 msec. In contact with the heater element 11 the energy and temperature of which have been controlled in this way, a fixing film 15 moves in the direction of the arrow shown in the drawing. An example of this fixing film



includes an endless film comprised of a heat-resistant sheet of 20 μm thick (comprising, for example, polyimide, polyetherimide, PES, or PFA) and a release layer (comprising a fluorine resin such as PTFE or PFA to which a conductive material is added) coated at least on the side coming into contact with the image to have a thickness of 10 μm . In general, the total thickness of the film may preferably be less than 100 μm , and more preferably less than 40 μm . The film is moved in the direction of the arrow in a wrinkle-free state by the action of the drive of, and tension between, a drive roller 16 and a follower roller 17.

The numeral 18 denotes a pressure roller having on its surface an elastic layer of rubber with good release properties as exemplified by silicone rubber. This pressure roller is pressed against the heater element at a total pressure of 4 to 20 kg through the film interposed between them and is rotated in pressure contact with the film. Toner 20 having not been fixed on a transferring medium 19 is led to the fixing zone by means of an inlet guide 21. A fixed image is thus obtained by the heating described above.

The above has been described with reference to an embodiment in which the fixing film comprises an endless belt. A sheet-feeding shaft and a wind-up

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



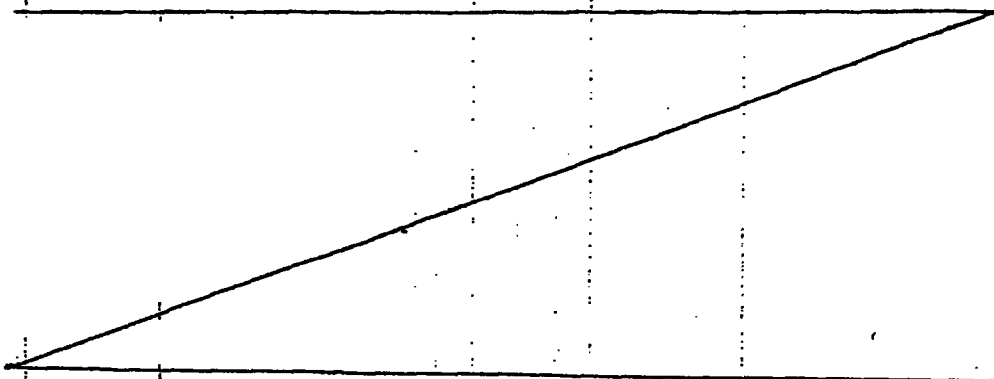
- 59 -

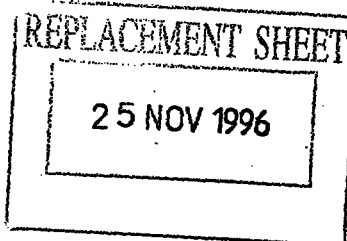
shaft may also be used, and the fixing film may not be endless.

The image forming apparatus includes an apparatus that forms an image by the use of a toner, as exemplified by copying machines, printers, and facsimile apparatus, to which the present fixing device can be applied.

When the temperature detected by the temperature sensor 14 in the low heat capacitance linear heater element 11 is T_1 , the surface temperature T_2 of the film 15 opposed to the resistance material 13 is about 10 to 30°C lower than T_1 . The surface temperature T_3 of the film on the part at which the film 15 is peeled from the toner-fixed face is a temperature substantially equal to the above temperature T_2 .

Suitable as methods of electrifying the heater element according to such a temperature control system are the pulse width modulation system, the frequency modulation system, the AC phase control system, etc.





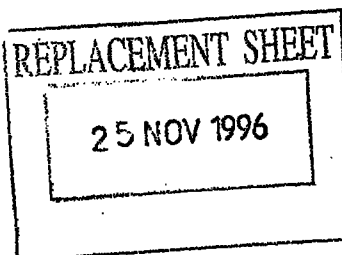
The present invention will be described below in greater detail by giving synthesis examples and working examples. The "part(s)" in the synthesis examples and working examples refers to "part(s) by weight".

Synthesis Example 1

In a reaction vessel, 200 parts of cumene was put, and the temperature was raised to the reflux temperature. A mixture of 100 parts of styrene monomer and 6 parts of di-tert-butyl peroxide was dropwise added thereto at 135°C in 4 hours. Under further reflux of cumene (146°C to 156°C), the solution polymerization was completed and then the cumene was removed. The polystyrene thus obtained was soluble in THF, and had a weight average molecular weight of 7,800, a molecular weight peak (MA) of 7,200 and a T_g of 67°C. This is designated as polymer A-1 of the binder resin for the toner of the present invention.

Synthesis Examples 2 to 5

Using the monomer compositions, polymerization initiators and solvents as shown in Table 1, the solution polymerization was carried out in the same manner as in Synthesis Example 1 to give polymers A-2 to A-5 of the binder resin for the toner of the present invention.



- 61 -

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

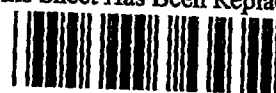


Table 1

Syntheses of Polymers A

		Monomer composition			Polymlzn.
Polymer		(parts)		Solvent	initiator
Synthesis Example:					
2	A-2	Styrene	(85)	Xylene	Benzoyl
		Butyl acrylate	(15)		peroxide
3	A-3	Styrene	(80)	Xylene	Benzoyl
		Butyl acrylate	(20)		peroxide
4	A-4	Styrene	(77)	Toluene	Benzoyl
		2-Ethylhexyl			peroxide
		acrylate	(23)		
5	A-5	Styrene	(80)	Toluene	Benzoyl
		2-Ethylhexyl			peroxide
		acrylate	(20)		

Table 1 (Cont'd)

Polymer	Weight average molecular weight	Molecular weight peak	Tg
A-2	11,000	9,200	62°C
A-3	17,000	15,600	62°C
A-4	21,000	19,200	57°C
A-5	24,000	22,300	64°C



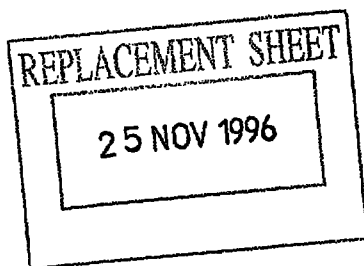
25 NOV 1996

Synthesis Example 6

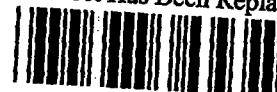
In a reaction vessel, 200 parts of deaerated water in which 0.1 part of a partially saponified product of polyvinyl alcohol was dissolved was put, and then the monomer composition as shown in Table 2 was added thereto to make up a suspension. The suspension was heated to 80°C in a nitrogen atmosphere. The suspension was maintained at that temperature for 24 hours, and then polymerization was completed. After the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, spherical polymer particles produced as a result of the polymerization were filtered, and then thoroughly washed with water, followed by dehydration and drying to give polymer B-1 of the binder resin for the toner of the present invention. The polymer had a weight average molecular weight of 452,000, a molecular weight peak of 433,000 and a Tg of 57°C.

Table 2

Monomer Composition	Mixing proportion
Styrene	72 parts
Methyl methacrylate	10 parts
Butyl acrylate	18 parts
Benzoyl peroxide	0.22 part



This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 63 -

Synthesis Examples 7 to 10

Using the monomer compositions and polymerization initiators as shown in Table 3, the suspension polymerization was carried out in the same manner as in Synthesis Example 6 to give polymers B-2 to B-5 of the binder resin for the toner of the present invention.

Table 3
Syntheses of Polymers B

		Monomer composition	Polymerization
		(parts)	initiator
Polymer			
Synthesis Example:			
7	B-2	Styrene (83) Butyl acrylate (17)	Benzoyl peroxide
8	B-3	Styrene (85) Butyl acrylate (15)	Benzoyl peroxide
9	B-4	Styrene (77) 2-Ethylhexyl acrylate (23)	1,1'-azobis (cyclohexane-1-carbonitrile)
10	B-5	Styrene (80) Butyl acrylate (20) Divinylbenzene (0.02)	Benzoyl peroxide



25 NOV 1996

Table 3 (Cont'd)

Polymer	Weight average molecular weight	Molecular weight peak	Tg
B-2	603,000	583,000	64°C
B-3	827,000	804,000	67°C
B-4	956,000	928,000	66°C
B-5	751,000	692,000	60°C

The weight average molecular weight (Mw), Mw/Mn, flow-out point, softening point and Tg of each of the above polymers A-1, A-2, A-3, A-4, A-5, B-1, B-2, B-3, B-4 and B-5 are shown in Table 4 below.

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

- 65 -

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

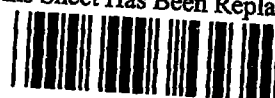


Table 4

Polymer	Mw	Mw/Mn	Flow-out point (°C)	Softening point (°C)	Tg (°C)
A-1	7,800	2.4	85	105	67
A-2	11,000	2.4	85	102	62
A-3	17,000	2.2	87	105	62
A-4	21,000	2.3	87	106	57
A-5	24,000	2.2	90	110	64
B-1	452,000	2.6	116	161	57
B-2	603,000	2.5	122	173	64
B-3	827,000	2.3	130	184	67
B-4	956,000	2.1	132	182	66
B-5	751,000	2.6	127	180	60

Comparative Synthesis Example 1

A comparative polymer A-6 was prepared in the same manner as in Example 1 except that the monomer composition as shown in Table 5 was used. This binder resin had a weight average molecular weight of 4,300, a molecular weight peak of 4,200 and a Tg of 54°C.



25 NOV 1996

Table 5

Monomer Composition	Mixing proportion
Styrene	92 parts
Butyl acrylate	8 parts
Di-tert-butyl peroxide	9 parts

Comparative Synthesis Example 2

A comparative polymer B-6 was prepared in the same manner as in Synthesis Example 6 except that the monomer composition as shown in Table 6 was used. This binder resin had a weight average molecular weight of 217,000, a molecular weight peak of 198,000 and a Tg of 59°C.

Table 6

Monomer Composition	Mixing proportion
Styrene	82 parts
Butyl acrylate	18 parts
Divinylbenzene	0.2 part
Benzoyl peroxide	0.5 part

Preparation examples of the binder resin according to the present invention will be described

REPLACEMENT SHEET

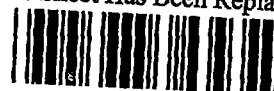
25 NOV 1996

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

- 67 -

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



below.

Preparation Example 1

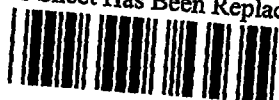
To 200 parts of xylene, 68 parts of polymer A-1 and 32 parts of polymer B-4 were added with stirring. Next, the mixture was heated to about 60°C to completely dissolve the polymers A-1 and B-4 added.

After the stirring was continued for about 2 hours, the xylene was removed. The resulting product is designated as binder resin 1 for the toner of the present invention.

Preparation Examples 2 to 10 and Comparative

Binder Resin Preparation Examples 1 to 3

Binder resins 2 to 10 for the toner of the present invention and comparative binder resins 1 to 3 were obtained in the same manner as in Preparation Example 1 except that the polymers as shown in Table 7 were used.



25 NOV 1996

Table 7

Preparation of Binder Resins and Comparative Binder Resins

Preparation example		Polymer A		Polymer B	
Binder resin	2	A-2	66 parts	B-5	34 parts
"	3	A-3	72 parts	B-4	28 parts
"	4	A-4	55 parts	B-3	45 parts
"	5	A-5	68 parts	B-4	32 parts
"	6	A-4	60 parts	B-4	40 parts
"	7	A-2	65 parts	B-3	35 parts
"	8	A-3	70 parts	B-3	30 part
"	9	A-4	60 parts	B-2	40 parts
"	10	A-5	65 parts	B-3	35 parts
Comp. binder resin	1	A-2	100 parts		0 part
"	"	2	Comp. 30 parts	Comp.	70 parts
"	"	A-6		B-6	
"	"	3	0 part	B-2	100parts

Note: Comp.= Comparative

Composition and physical properties of release agents used in Examples and Comparative Examples described below are shown in Table 8.

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

- 69 -

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

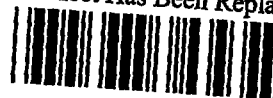
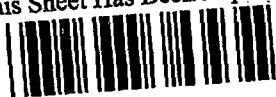


Table 8

Release agent	Wax	Graft component (weight ratio)	Graft component wt. ratio	Mw	Mn	Mw/Mn	Melting point
Graft-modified wax A	PE	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl fumarate(1)	1/100	1,900	880	2.2	95
Graft-modified wax B	PE	Styrene	25/100	820	530	1.5	91
Graft-modified wax C	PE	Dibutyl fumarate	30/100	810	550	1.5	101
Graft-modified wax D	PB-1	Styrene(3)/ dibutyl maleate(1)	5/100	750	500	1.5	81
Graft-modified wax E	PE*	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl maleate(1)	40/100	980	530	1.8	108
Graft-modified wax F	PE*	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl maleate(1)	15/100	1,650	750	2.2	115
Graft-modified wax G	PW	Styrene(1)/ diethyl maleate(1)	18/100	800	500	1.6	82
Graft-modified wax H	PE	o-Methylstyrene(1)/ dibutyl maleate(1)	10/100	1,200	500	2.4	112
Graft-modified wax I	PP	Styrene(1.5)/ dibutyl maleate(1)	8/100	2,000	850	2.4	117
Graft-modified wax J	PE	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl acrylate(2)	10/100	800	530	1.5	93
Wax 1	PP	-	-	4,900	1,300	3.8	135
Wax 2	PE	-	-	1,150	560	2.1	109
Wax 3	PE	-	-	5,200	1,370	3.8	128
Wax 4	PE	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl acrylate(1)	10/100	1,500	450	3.3	78

PE: Polyethylene, PB: Polybutene, PW: Paraffin wax, PP: Polypropylene
 * trade name: Sazol Wax H2



REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

Example 1

Binder resin 1	100 parts
Magnetic material	60 parts
Negative charge control agent	2 parts
Graft-modified polyethylene wax A	3 parts

The above materials were premixed using a Henschel mixer, and then kneaded for 20 minutes using a twin-roll mill heated to 150°C. The kneaded product was left to cool, and then crushed with a cutter mill. Thereafter the crushed product was finely pulverized by means of a fine grinding mill making use of a jet stream, followed by classification using an air classifier to give a black fine powder (a magnetic toner) with a volume average particle diameter of 11.2 μm .

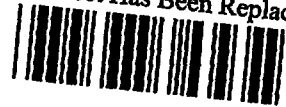
Based on 100 parts of the magnetic toner, 0.4 part of fine colloidal silica powder was dry-blended to give a toner having colloidal silica on the surfaces of toner particles. This is designated as toner 1 of the present invention.

Grindability of toners can be represented by the throughput of the toner that can be pulverized per unit hour. In the case of the toner 1, it was 16 kg/hr at an air pressure of 5.6 kg/cm², and found very good. No melt-adhesion or the like occurred in the grinding mill.

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 71 -

Blocking resistance was examined on the basis of the degree of agglomeration observed when about 10 g of toner was put in a polyethylene glass of 100 cc and left to stand at 50°C for a day. The degree of agglomeration was measured with Powder Tester manufactured by Hosokawa Micron Corporation. A product left at room temperature and the product left at 50°C for a day showed 9 wt.% and 12 wt.%, respectively, which were substantially the same values, and the difference (ΔG) was only 3 %. From these facts it was confirmed that substantially no blocking occurred.

Fixing performance, anti-offset, wind-around resistance, and image properties or durability were examined using a modified machine of a copier NP-6650, manufactured by Canon Inc..

The preset temperature of its fixing device was dropped by 5°C, at which the tests were carried out.

In particular, as to the anti-offset, the cleaning mechanism for the fixing roller was detached from the copying machine and the evaluation was made by counting, as copy durability, the number of copy sheets at which an image was stained or the fixing roller was contaminated.

As to the fixing performance, fixed images

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 72 -

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

were rubbed 10 times with lens cleaning paper "Dusper" (trademark; OZU Paper Co., Ltd.) under application of a load of about 100 g, and any peeling of the fixed images was indicated by the rate (%) of decrease in reflection density. The fixed image for evaluation was the 200th sheet when copies were continuously taken on 200 sheets.

As to the wind-around resistance, entirely solid black images were produced on three sheets, and the state of traces left on images when the sheets are peeled with peel claws of the fixing roller was examined to judge the degree to which the peeling relied on the claws.

As a result, in respect of the fixing performance, the rate of decrease was 3 % and it was found very good. The anti-offset was so good that no stain or contamination was seen on images or the roller even when copies were taken on 50,000 sheets. The wind-around resistance was also found very good although traces made by the claws were slightly left on the images.

Running tests were carried out on about 10,000 sheets, using an image with an image-area percentage of about 5 %. As a result, images were reproduced in a good state. Although the melt-adhesion and filming to the photosensitive member were slightly seen, the

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

- 73 -

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



copied images were not affected at all.

The toner had a THF-insoluble matter of 4 wt.%, an Mw/Mn according to GPC of the THF-soluble matter, of 38.2, a molecular weight peak MA of 7,700, a molecular weight peak MB of 765,000, an MB/MA of 99, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sc of 1:0.36:0.60.

Example 2

Binder resin 2	100 parts
Magnetic material	80 parts
Positive charge control agent	2 parts
Graft-modified wax B	4 parts

The above materials were premixed using a Henschel mixer, and then kneaded for 20 minutes using a twin-roll mill heated to 150°C. The kneaded product was left to cool, and then crushed with a cutter mill. Thereafter the crushed product was finely pulverized by means of a fine grinding mill making use of a jet current, followed by classification using an air classifier to give a black fine powder (a magnetic toner) with a volume average particle diameter of 8.7 μm .

Based on 100 parts of the magnetic toner, 0.4 part of fine colloidal silica powder was dry-blended to give a toner having colloidal silica on the surfaces of toner particles. This is designated as



25 NOV 1996

toner 2 of the present invention.

Grindability of the toner was 5.8 kg/hr at an air pressure of 5.6 kg/cm^2 , and found very good. No melt-adhesion or the like occurred in the grinding mill.

Blocking resistance was examined on the basis of the degree of agglomeration observed when about 10 g of toner was put in a polyethylene glass of 100 cc and left to stand at 50°C for a day. A product left at room temperature and the product left at 50°C for a day showed 17 wt.% and 21 wt.%, respectively, which were substantially the same values, and the difference (ΔG) was only 4 %. From these facts it was confirmed that substantially no blocking occurred.

Fixing performance, anti-offset, wind-around resistance, and image properties or durability were examined using a modified machine of a copier NP-4835, manufactured by Canon Inc.

The preset temperature of its fixing device was dropped by 10°C , at which the tests were carried out.

In particular, as to the anti-offset, the cleaning mechanism for the fixing roller was detached from the copying machine and the evaluation was made by counting, as copy durability, the number of copy sheets at which an image was stained or the fixing

25 NOV 1996



roller was contaminated.

The fixing performance and the wind-around resistance were also evaluated in the same manner as in Example 1.

As a result, in respect of the fixing performance, the rate of decrease was 6 % and it was found very good. The anti-offset was so good that no stain or contamination was seen on images or the roller even when copies were taken on 1,000 sheets. The wind-around resistance was also found very good although traces made by the claws were slightly left on the images.

Running tests were carried out on about 30,000 sheets, using an image with an image-area percentage of about 5 %. As a result, images were reproduced in a good state. No melt-adhesion nor filming to the photosensitive member was seen.

The toner 2 had a THF-insoluble matter of 2 wt.%, an Mw/Mn according to GPC of the THF-soluble matter, of 24.7, a molecular weight peak MA of 14,000, a molecular weight peak MB of 680,000, an MB/MA of 48.6, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1:0.40:0.59.

Example 3

Using the toner 2 prepared in Example 2, unfixed images were obtained by means of a modified



25 NOV 1996

machine of a copier FC-5, manufactured by Canon Inc.

A test for fixing the unfixed images was carried out using the external fixing device as shown in Fig. 1, comprising a pressure member that stands opposite to a heater element in pressure contact and brings a recording medium into close contact with the heater element through a film interposed between them. Used as a material of the fixing film 15 was an endless film comprising a polyimide film coated with a release layer with a thickness of 10 μm to which a fluorine resin and a conductive material were added. A silicone rubber was used as the pressure roller 18, and the fixing was carried out with a nip of 3.5 mm, under a total pressure of 8 kg between the heater element 11 and the pressure roller 18, and at a process speed of 50 mm/sec. The film was moved in the direction of the arrow in a wrinkle-free state by the action of the drive of, and tension between, the drive roller 16 and the follower roller 17.

The heater element 11 was comprised of a low heat capacitance linear heater element, to which energy was pulsewise applied and temperature control was carried out. The resistance material of the heater element 11 had a power consumption of 150 W. Temperatures were so controlled as to be the same as, or lower by 15°C than the fixing assembly (preset

25 NOV 1996



fixing temperature: 180°C) of the FC-5 modified machine, at which the tests were carried out. As a result, the fixing performance was 2 % in terms of the rate of decrease without stain and contamination on both the image and the fixing film even after 3,000 sheet running, and found good. In addition, the waiting time was 3 seconds or less, and the power consumption was significantly lower than that in a heat-roller fixing system.

Example 4

Binder resin 8	100 parts
Carbon black	4 parts
Positive charge control agent	2 parts
Graft-modified wax A	5 parts

Using the above materials, a toner was prepared in the same manner as in Example 2. This toner and colloidal silica were mixed in amounts of 100 parts and 0.4 part, respectively. The resulting toner is designated as toner 3 of the present invention. In iron powder with a particle size of 200 mesh-pass and 300 mesh-on, the toner 3 was mixed in an amount of about 10 wt.% to give a developer. Only the toner was replenished.

The grindability of this toner was 15.2 kg/hr in terms of the throughput under an air pressure of 5.6 kg/cm², and was found very good. There also



25 NOV 1996

occurred no melt-adhesion to the interior of the grinding mill. The blocking resistance was evaluated as $AG = 5$, and was found not problematic at all.

Image properties and fixing performance were evaluated using a modified machine of a copier FC-3, manufactured by Canon Inc. As a result, images were reproduced in a good state, and stable images were obtained even after 1,000 sheet running. In addition, no melt-adhesion nor filming to the photosensitive drum was seen.

The preset temperature of the fixing assembly was dropped by 20°C and also the cleaning mechanism was detached from the fixing assembly, under the state of which the above running was carried out. As a result, the fixing performance was about 5 % in terms of the rate of decrease, and was found good. The anti-offset and the wind-around resistance were also found good.

The present toner had a THF-insoluble matter of 1.8 wt.%, an Mw/Mn according to GPC of the THF-soluble matter, of 29, a molecular weight peak MA of 18,000, a molecular weight peak MB of 770,000, an MB/MA of 43, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1:0.43:0.38.

Examples 5 to 8

Toners 4 to 7 of the present invention were

25 NOV 1996



obtained in the same manner as in Example 1 except that the binder resin was replaced with the binder resins as shown in Fig. 9.

Examples 9 to 11

Toners 8 to 10 of the present invention were obtained in the same manner as in Example 2 except that the binder resin and release agent were replaced with those as shown in Fig. 9.

Results of the evaluation made on the toners of Examples 5 to 11 are shown in Table 10.

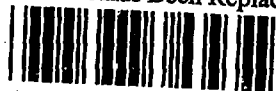
Comparative Example 1

Comparative toner 1 was obtained in the same manner as in Example 2 except that comparative binder resin 1 was used which contained 100 parts of polymer A-2 only as the binder resin.

In the case of this comparative toner, fine toner particles were formed in a large quantity when it was pulverized under an air pressure of 5.6 kg/cm^2 , resulting in a broad particle size distribution. Thus the productivity was clearly inferior.

Using the FC-5 modified machine, the fixing performance, anti-offset, wind-around resistance, and image properties or durability were examined in the same manner as in Example 2.

As a result, in respect of the anti-offset, stain and contamination were respectively occurred on



25 NOV 1996

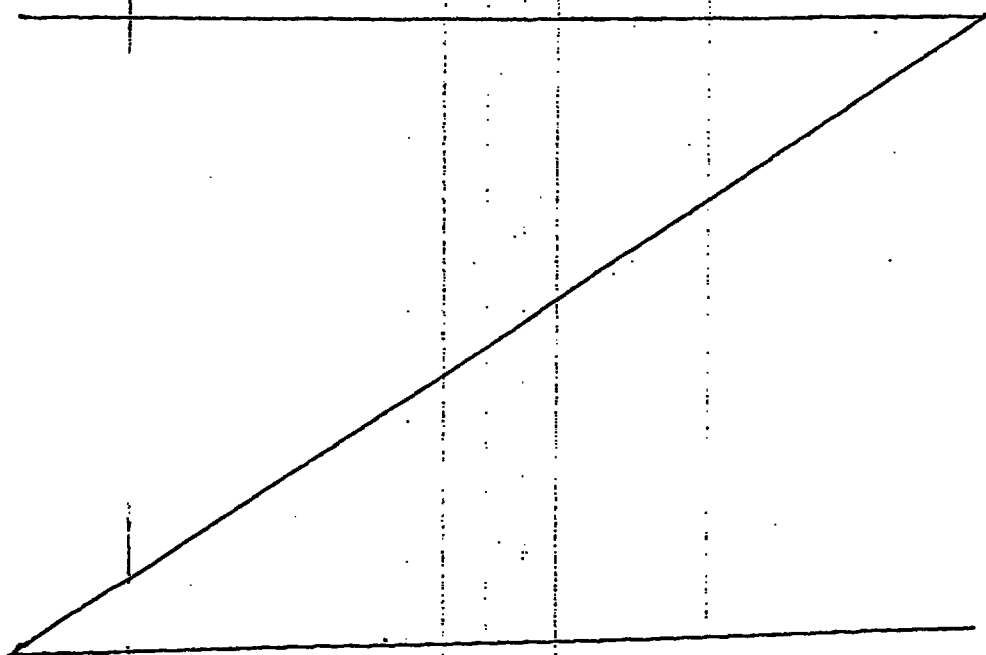
- 80 -

both the images and the roller when copies were taken on 20 sheets. In respect of the wind-around resistance, traces made by the peel claws were clearly left on the images. In some instances, no paper was discharged from the fixing assembly.

The present toner had a THF-insoluble matter of 0 wt.%, an Mw/Mn according to GPC of the THF-soluble matter, of 2.1, and a molecular weight peak MA of 8,900.

Comparative Example 2 and 3

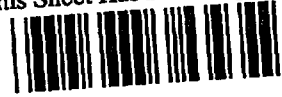
Comparative toners 2 and 3 were obtained in the same manner as in Example 2 except that the binder resins and release agents were changed to those shown in Table 9. Results of the evaluation made thereon are shown in Table 10..



REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 81 -

Table 9

THF-in-		Binder resin matter		Mw/Mn	MA	MB	MB/MA	SA:SB:Sd	Release agent
Example:									
5	4	1.3	31	10,000	310,000	31	1:0.43:0.59	Graft-modified wax C	
6	10	1.5	20	13,000	667,000	51	1:0.37:0.56	Graft-modified wax D	
7	9	2.0	25	18,000	568,000	32	1:0.41:0.39	Graft-modified wax E	
8	6	0.5	29	18,000	770,000	43	1:0.43:0.48	Graft-modified wax F	
9	7	1.0	46	8,600	667,000	78	1:0.38:0.55	Graft-modified wax G	
10	3	1.5	26	15,000	770,000	51	1:0.30:0.60	Graft-modified wax H	
11	5	1.0	22	21,000	760,000	36	1:0.35:0.50	Graft-modified wax I	
Comparative Example:									
2	Cp-2	12	16	4,100	180,000	44	1:0.83:0.47	Wax 1	
3	Cp-3	1.0	2.4	-	570,000	-	-	Wax 2	

Cp: Comparative binder resin



25 NOV 1996

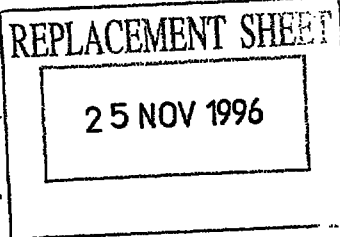
Table 10

**Results of Evaluation on Toners of the Invention
and Comparative Toner**

	Grind- ability	Block- ing resist- ance (ΔG)	Fixing perform- ance	Anti- offset	Melt- adhesion and filming to photosensi- tive member
Example:					
5	Good	4 %	1 %	Good	Same as Ex.1
6	Good	4 %	4 %	Good	Same as Ex.1
7	Good	5 %	3 %	Good	Same as Ex.1
8	Good	3 %	5 %	Good	Same as Ex.1
9	Good	3 %	3 %	Good	Not at all
10	Good	4 %	4 %	Good	Not occurred
11	Good	4 %	2 %	Good	Not occurred
Comparative Example:					
2	Poor	4 %	15 %	Poor	Occurred
3	Inferior	4 %	50 %	Poor	Not occurred

Preparation of resin 11

In a reaction vessel, 200 parts of xylene was put, and the temperature was raised to the reflux temperature. A mixture of 90 parts of styrene monomer, 10 parts of butyl acrylate monomer and 7



This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 83 -

parts of di-tert-butyl peroxide was mixed therein, and the solution polymerization was completed in 6 hours under reflux of xylene.

The styrene-butyl acrylate copolymer (hereinafter "St-BA copolymer") thus obtained had the physical properties as shown in the column of "Low-temperature softening resin" on "Resin 11" in Table 11.

On the other hand, 82 parts of styrene monomer, 18 parts of butyl acrylate monomer, 0.3 part of polyvinyl alcohol, 200 parts of deaerated water and 0.11 part of benzoyl peroxide were mixed and suspendedly dispersed. The resulting suspension was heated and maintained at 78°C for 24 hours in a nitrogen atmosphere, and then the polymerization was completed to give a high-temperature softening resin as shown on "Resin 11" in Table 11.

A dried product of this high-temperature softening resin was introduced in the resin solution formed when the solution polymerization for the above low-temperature softening resin was completed, and made to completely dissolve in a solvent. Thereafter the solvent was removed. Resin 11 was thus prepared.

Preparation of resins 12 to 15 and comparative resins 4 to 6

Resins 12 to 15 and comparative resins 4 to 6,



25 NOV 1996

as shown in Table 11, were respectively synthesized and prepared according to the procedure for resin 11.

Example 12

After 100 parts of the resin 11, 70 parts of a magnetic material, 2 parts of a positive charge control agent and 4 parts of graft-modified polyethylene wax J ($M_n: 5.3 \times 10^2$; $M_w: 8.0 \times 10^2$; $M_w/M_n: 1.5$; melting point: 93°C) in which styrene and butyl acrylates were used as graft components, the mixture was melt-kneaded using a twin-screw extruder. The kneaded product was cooled and then pulverized by means of an jet-stream grinding mill, followed by classification using an air classifier to give a black fine powder (a magnetic toner) with a volume average particle diameter of about $8.5 \mu\text{m}$. Based on 100 parts of the resulting magnetic toner, 0.6 part of hydrophobic colloidal silica powder was added and blended to give toner A, having hydrophobic colloidal silica on the surfaces of toner particles.

Unfixed images of this toner A were obtained using a modified machine, a copier NP-1215 (manufactured by Canon Inc.) from which the fixing assembly was detached. Commercially available copy paper, Canon New Dry Paper (54 g/m^2 ; Canon Sales Inc.) was used as a recording medium.

A tests for fixing the unfixed images was

25 NOV 1996

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 85 -

carried out using a temperature-variable heat roller external fixing assembly comprising an upper roller comprised of Teflon and a lower roller comprised of silicone rubber, under conditions of a nip of 4 mm, a pressure between the upper and lower rollers, of 0.4 kg/cm in linear pressure and a process speed of 45 mm/sec, and with temperature control at intervals of 5°C within the temperature range of from 100°C to 230°C. The fixed images thus obtained were rubbed with lens cleaning paper "Dusper" (trademark; OZU Paper Co., Ltd.) under application of a load of 50 g/cm², and the temperature at which the rate of decrease in image density before and after the rubbing was not more than 7 % was regarded as a fixing starting temperature. As to anti-offset tests, the fixed images and the rollers were observed to make evaluation.

As a result, the fixing starting temperature was as low as 120°C and a non-offset region was seen at 110 to 215°C, showing that the low-temperature fixing had been achieved. The toner also showed a good blocking resistance. The blocking resistance was evaluated on samples obtained after toners were left in a 50°C dry container for 3 days.

Results of the evaluation are shown in Table

13.



25 NOV 1996

Examples 13 to 16

Toners B to E were prepared using resins 12 to 15, respectively, shown in Table 11 in the same manner as in Example 12. Evaluation was made on their fixing performance.

The resulting toners are noted as Examples 13 to 16, respectively, and the results of the evaluation are shown in Table 13.

Comparative Examples 4 to 6

Toners F to H were prepared using comparative resins 4 to 6, respectively, shown in Table 11 in the same manner as in Example 12. Evaluation was made on their fixing performance.

The resulting toners are noted as Comparative Examples 4 to 6, respectively, and the results of the evaluation are shown in Table 13.

Comparative Example 7

Toner I was prepared in the same manner as in Example 13 except that 3 parts of wax 3 (polyethylene wax) melting at 128°C was used as the release agent. Evaluation was made on its fixing performance. Results obtained are shown in Table 13.

Comparative Example 8

Toner J was prepared in the same manner as in Example 12 except that 3 parts of wax 4 (graft-modified polyethylene wax) obtained by subjecting

25 NOV 1996



polyethylene wax (Mn: 4.5×10^2 ; Mw: 1.5×10^3 ; Mw/Mn: 3.3) to the same graft modification as in Example 1 was used as the release agent. Evaluation was made on its fixing performance. Results obtained are shown in Table 13.

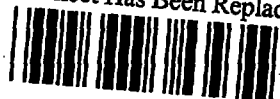
As will be evident from Table 13, the toners of Examples 12 to 16 have achieved good low-temperature fixing performance, anti-offset, blocking resistance and developing performance. However, with regard to the toner of Comparative Example 4, though achievable of low-temperature fixing performance, it shows a poor anti-offset. With regard to the toner of Comparative Example 5, it shows a poor low-temperature fixing performance.

In respect of the toner of Comparative Example 6, no low-temperature fixing performance is achieved. In respect of the toner of Comparative Example 7, there are problems in the low-temperature fixing performance and developing performance.

In respect of the toner of Comparative Example 8, it has achieved the low-temperature fixing performance but shows a poor blocking resistance.

From the foregoing, it has been made clear that the toners for developing electrostatic images according to the present invention have superior low-temperature fixing performance and anti-offset, and

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 88 -

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

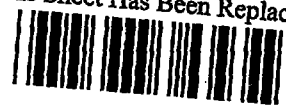
have the composition that does not adversely affect the blocking resistance and developing performance.

Example 17

Unfixed images were obtained using as a toner the toner A as used in Example 12.

A test for fixing the unfixed images was carried out using the external fixing device as shown in Fig. 1, provided with a pressure member that stands opposite to a heater element in pressure contact and brings a recording medium into close contact with the heater element through a film interposed between them. Used as a material of the fixing film 15 was an endless film comprising a polyimide film coated with a release layer with a thickness of 10 μm to which a fluorine resin and a conductive material were added. A silicone rubber was used as the pressure roller 18, and the fixing was carried out with a nip of 3.5 mm and at a process speed of 45 mm/sec. The film was moved in the direction of the arrow in a wrinkle-free state by the action of the drive of, and tension between, the drive roller 16 and the follower roller 17.

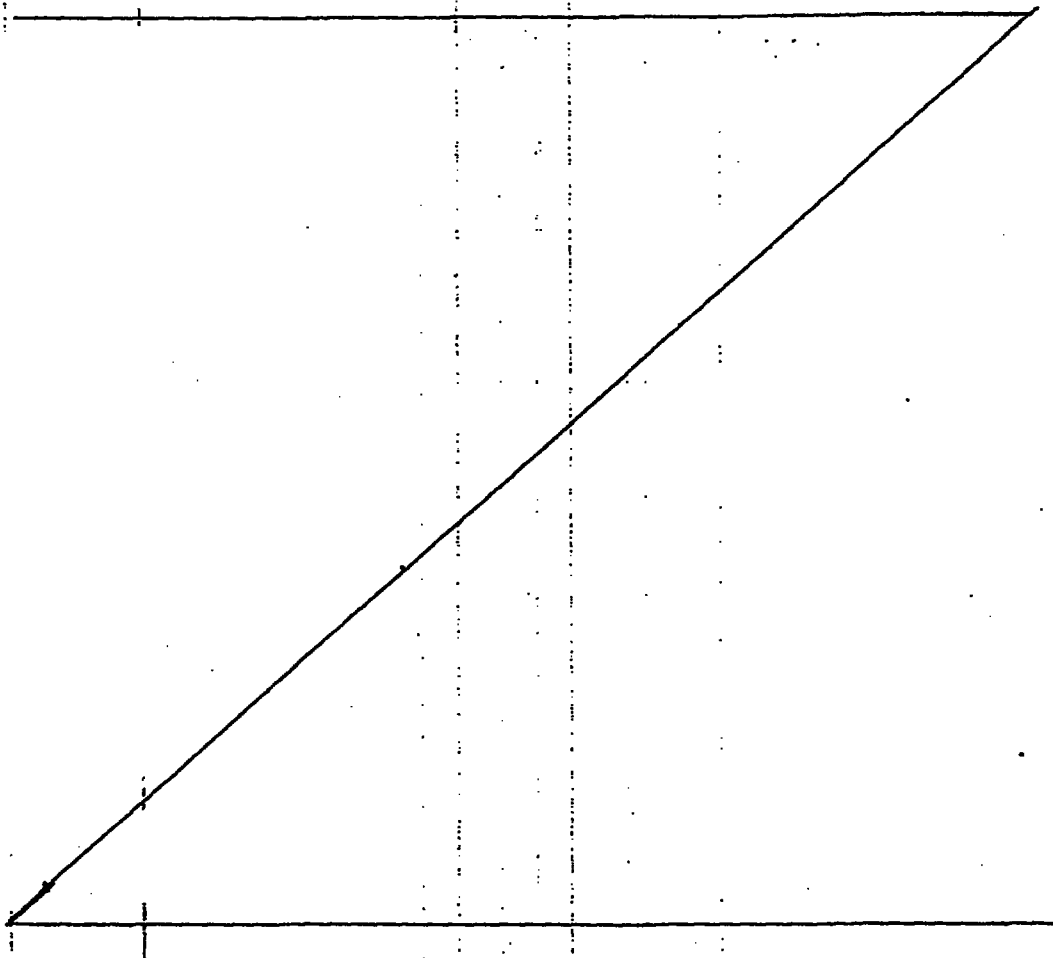
The heater element 11 was comprised of a low heat capacitance linear heater element, to which energy was pulsewise applied and temperature control was carried out. Temperatures were controlled in the



same manner as in Example 12, i.e., at intervals of 5°C within the range of from 100 to 230°C.

As a result, the fixing starting temperature was as low as 120°C and a non-offset region was seen at 105 to 215°C, showing that the low-temperature fixing had been achieved. The toner also showed a good wind-around resistance.

Table 12 shows physical properties of the binder resins 11 to 15 and comparative binder resins 4 to 6.





REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

Table 11

Low-temperature softening resin						High-temperature softening resin					
Com- posi- tion/ amount (wt.%)	Mw	Mw/Mn	(1)	(2)	Tg °C	Com- posi- tion/ amount (wt.%)	Mw	Mw/Mn	(1)	(2)	Tg °C
Resin:											
11 St-BA (75)	1.1x10 ⁴	2.4	85	103	58	St-BA (25)	9.5x10 ⁵	2.6	131	184	69.5
12 St-BA (70)	6.5x10 ³	2.2	84	101	57	St-BA (30)	9.5x10 ⁵	2.5	131	184	69.5
13 St-BA (70)	1.5x10 ⁴	2.5	86	104	58	St-BA (30)	6.4x10 ⁵	2.4	122	172	65.5
14 St-2EHA (75)	1.1x10 ⁴	2.5	86	104	59	St-2EHA (25)	7.3x10 ⁵	2.3	127	180	67.0
15 St-BA (80)	6.5x10 ³	2.2	84	101	57	St-BA-DVB (20)	1.0x10 ⁶	2.5	135	193	70.5
Comp. binder resin:											
4 St-BA (70)	6.5x10 ³	2.2	84	101	57	St-BA (30)	3.6x10 ⁵	2.5	101	147	65
5 St-BA (55)	6.5x10 ³	2.2	84	101	57	St-BA (45)	3.6x10 ⁵	2.5	101	147	65
6 St-BA (90)	2.5x10 ⁴	2.3	92	115	58	St-BA (10)	9.5x10 ⁵	2.5	131	184	69.5

(1): Flow-out point, (2): Softening point
 St: Styrene, DVB: Divinylbenzene
 BA: Butyl acrylate
 2EHA: 2-Ethylhexyl acrylate
 Comp.: Comparative

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



91

Table 12

Binder resin	THF-insoluble resin matter	Mw/Mn	MA	MB	MB/MA	SA:SB:Sd
11	0.9	28	8.0×10^3	6.3×10^5	78.8	1:0.35:0.48
12	1.2	30	4.5×10^3	6.3×10^5	140	1:0.40:0.55
13	1.3	24	1.1×10^4	4.8×10^5	43.6	1:0.39:0.40
14	1.0	26	8.0×10^3	5.1×10^5	63.8	1:0.34:0.45
15	2.0	38	4.5×10^3	6.7×10^5	148.9	1:0.31:0.60
Comp. binder resin: 4	0.9	27	4.5×10^3	2.9×10^5	64.4	1:0.40:0.38
5	1.1	20	4.5×10^3	2.9×10^5	64.4	1:0.71:0.36
6	0.7	25	2.1×10^4	6.3×10^5	30	1:0.22:0.37

Comp.: Comparative

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 92 -

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

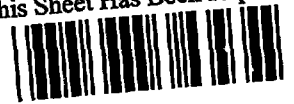
Table 13

Evaluation on Fixing Performance

	Fixing start- ing temp. (°C)	Non- offset temp. range (°C)	Fixing temp. range	Block- ing resist- ance (50°C, 3 days)	Devel- oping per- form- ance
Example:					
12, Toner A	120	110-215	95	A	A
13, Toner B	115	110-215	100	A	A
14, Toner C	125	110-210	85	A	A
15, Toner D	120	110-215	95	A	A
16, Toner E	110	105-210	100	A	A
Comparative Example:					
4, Toner F	115	110-155	40	A	A
5, Toner G	140	135-210	70	A	A
6, Toner H	150	140-215	65	A	A
7, Toner I	140	135-210	70	A	BC
8, Toner J	115	110-215	100	BC	A
Example:					
17 Toner A	120	105-215	95	A	A

A: Good, BC: Poor or problematic

25 NOV 1996



As described above, the present invention can achieve a low cost in the operation of copying machines and yet can provide good images, because of the superior low-temperature fixing performance and developing performance of the toner.

A toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprises a binder resin and a colorant. Such binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\overline{M}_w/\overline{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8.

CLAIMS:

1. A toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprising a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\overline{M}_w/\overline{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex A corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996



molecular weight distribution curve by Sd.

2. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin contains the THF-insoluble matter in an amount of not more than 5 % by weight.

3. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an Mw/Mn of not less than 20.

4. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an Mw/Mn of from 25 to 60.

5. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 5,000 to 15,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 450,000 to 900,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 30,000 to 300,000.

6. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin

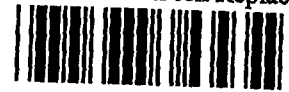
REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996



- 30 -

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



has an MB/MA of from 30 to 120.

7. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an MB/MA of from 40 to 100.

8. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak other than the MA, in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000.

9. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak other than the MB, in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000.

10. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight minimum other than the Md, in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000.

11. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996



- 91 -

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.7 : 0.4 to 0.7.

12. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.6 : 0.5 to 0.7.

13. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin further comprises a release agent.

14. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent is contained in an amount of from 0.1 % by weight to 20 % by weight based on the binder resin.

15. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent is contained in an amount of from 1 % by weight to 10 % by weight based on the binder resin.

16. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent has a number average molecular weight (Mn) of not more than 1,000, a weight average molecular weight (Mw) of not more than 2,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996



3, and a melting point of from 60 to 120°C.

17. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said release agent has an Mn of from 400 to 700, an Mw of from 500 to 1,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 2.5, and a melting point of from 60 to 100°C, and is contained in an amount of from 1 % by weight to 10 % by weight based on the binder resin.

18. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent comprises a graft-modified wax, a low-molecular weight polyethylene wax, a low-molecular weight ethylene-propylene copolymer, a low-molecular weight polypropylene wax or a paraffin wax.

19. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent comprises a polyolefin wax graft-modified with an aromatic vinyl monomer, an unsaturated fatty acid or an unsaturated fatty acid ester.

20. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has an Mn of not more than

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996



1,000, an Mw of not more than 2,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 30 and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C.

21. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has an Mn of from 400 to 700, an Mw of from 700 to 1,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 2.0, and a melting point of from 60 to 100°C.

22. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has a graft component in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 100 parts by weight based on 100 parts by weight of the polyolefin.

23. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has a graft component in an amount of from 1 part by weight to 50 parts by weight based on 100 parts by weight of the polyolefin.

24. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has a melt viscosity of from 1 cps to 250 cps at a temperature of 160°C.

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996



25. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein;

said binder resin contains i) two kinds of styrene-acrylate copolymers, a low-temperature softening resin and a high-temperature softening resin, and ii) a graft-modified polyolefin;

said low-temperature softening resin having a weight average molecular weight (Mw) of from 5.0×10^3 to 3.0×10^4 , a ratio of Mw to a number average molecular weight (Mn) (Mw/Mn) of not more than 3.0, a flow-out point in a flow tester, of from 75°C to 90°C, a softening point of from 80°C to 110°C, and a glass transition point (Tg) of from 55°C to 65°C and being contained in said binder resin in an amount of not less than 65 wt.%; said high-temperature softening resin having a weight average molecular weight (Mw) of from 4.0×10^5 to 1.5×10^6 , a ratio of Mw to a number average molecular weight (Mn) (Mw/Mn) of not more than 3.0, a flow-out point in a flow tester, of from 110°C to 160°C, a softening point of from 150°C to 230°C, and a glass transition point (Tg) of not less than 55°C; said low-temperature softening resin and said high-temperature softening resin being in a proportion ranging from 50:50 to 90:10 in weight proportion; and said low-temperature softening resin being obtained by solution polymerization, said high-temperature

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996



softening resin being obtained by suspension polymerization, and the both being mixed in a solvent capable of dissolving the both; and

said graft-modified polyolefin having a number average molecular weight (M_n) of not more than 1.0×10^3 , a weight average molecular weight (M_w) of not more than 2.5×10^3 , an M_w/M_n of not more than 3.0, and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C .

26. A heat fixing method comprising;
imparting a toner image onto a recording medium, wherein a toner that forms said toner image comprises a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight (M_w/M_n) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex A corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by Sd; and

heat-fixing said toner image to said recording medium by means of a heater element stationarily supported and a pressure member that stands opposite to said heat element in pressure contact and brings said recording medium into close contact with said heater element through a film interposed between them.

27. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element has a temperature of from 100°C to 300°C.

28. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said toner image is heated with a heater element having a temperature of from 100°C to 300°C, through a film having a thickness of from 1 μ m to 100 μ m.

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996



29. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said film has a heat resistance.

30. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein said film comprises a layer formed of a polymer selected from the group consisting of polyimide, polyester, polyethylene terephthalate, a tetrafluoroethylene-perfluoroalkyl vinyl ether copolymer, polytetrafluoroethylene and polyamide.

31. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein said film comprises a layer formed of a metal.

32. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein said film has at least one of a release layer and a low-resistance layer.

33. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein said film comprises a layer of a polyimide film and a fluorine resin layer.

34. A heat fixing method according to Claim 33, wherein said fluorine resin layer comprises a conductive material dispersed therein.

35. A heat fixing method according to Claim

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996



34, wherein said fluorine resin layer comprises polytetrafluoroethylene.

36. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said film is brought into pressure contact with said heater element by means of said pressure member under a total pressure of from 4 kg to 20 kg.

37. A heat fixing method according to Claim 36, wherein said pressure member is provided with a pressure roller having a rubber elastic layer.

38. A heat fixing method according to Claim 36, wherein said pressure member is provided with a pressure roller having an elastic layer formed of silicone rubber.

39. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element is heated by applying to a resistance material a current with a pulse-like waveform.

40. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element has a low heat capacitance and has a linear structure.

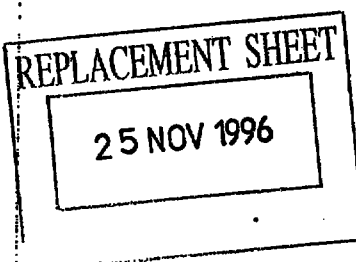
REPLACEMENT SHEET

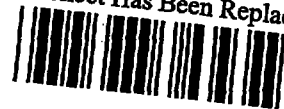
25 NOV 1996



41. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element is provided with a resistance material and a temperature sensor, and when the heater element temperature detected by the temperature sensor is T_1 , the surface temperature T_2 of the film opposed to said resistance material is about 10°C to about 30°C lower than the temperature T_1 and the surface temperature T_3 of the film on the part at which the film is peeled from a fixed toner image is a temperature substantially equal to the temperature T_2 .

42. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said toner comprises the toner according to any one of Claims 2 to 25.





- 106 -

ELECTROSTATIC IMAGE DEVELOPING TONER AND
FIXING METHODABSTRACT OF THE DISCLOSURE

A toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprises a binder resin and a colorant. Such binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8.

FIGURE 1

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

S-728 02 02

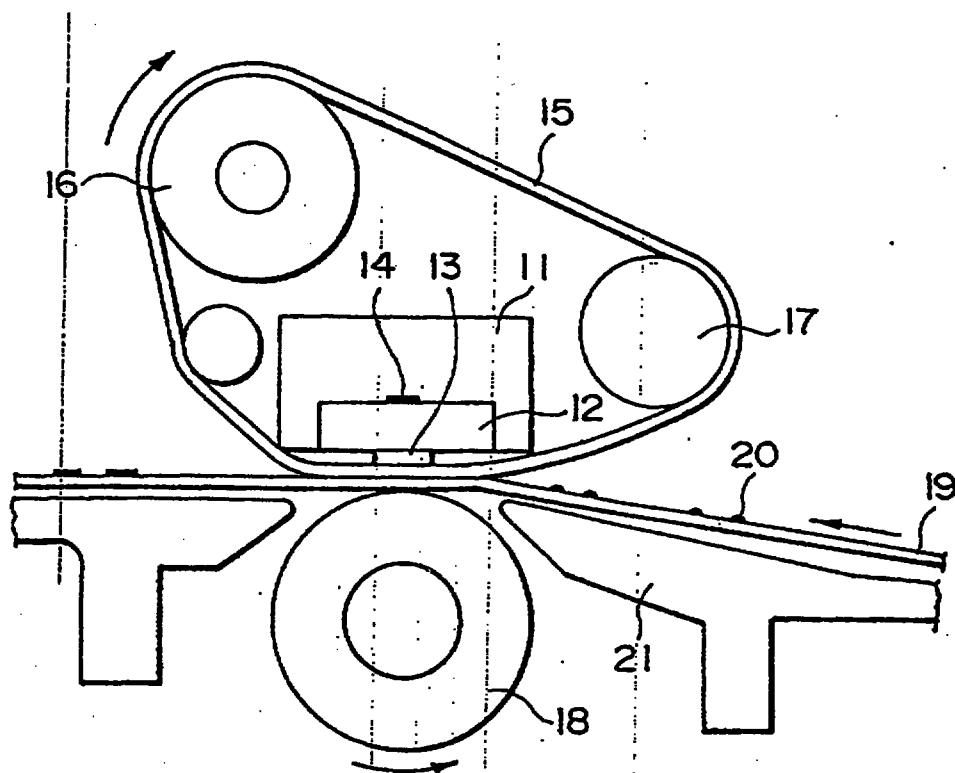


FIG. 1

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

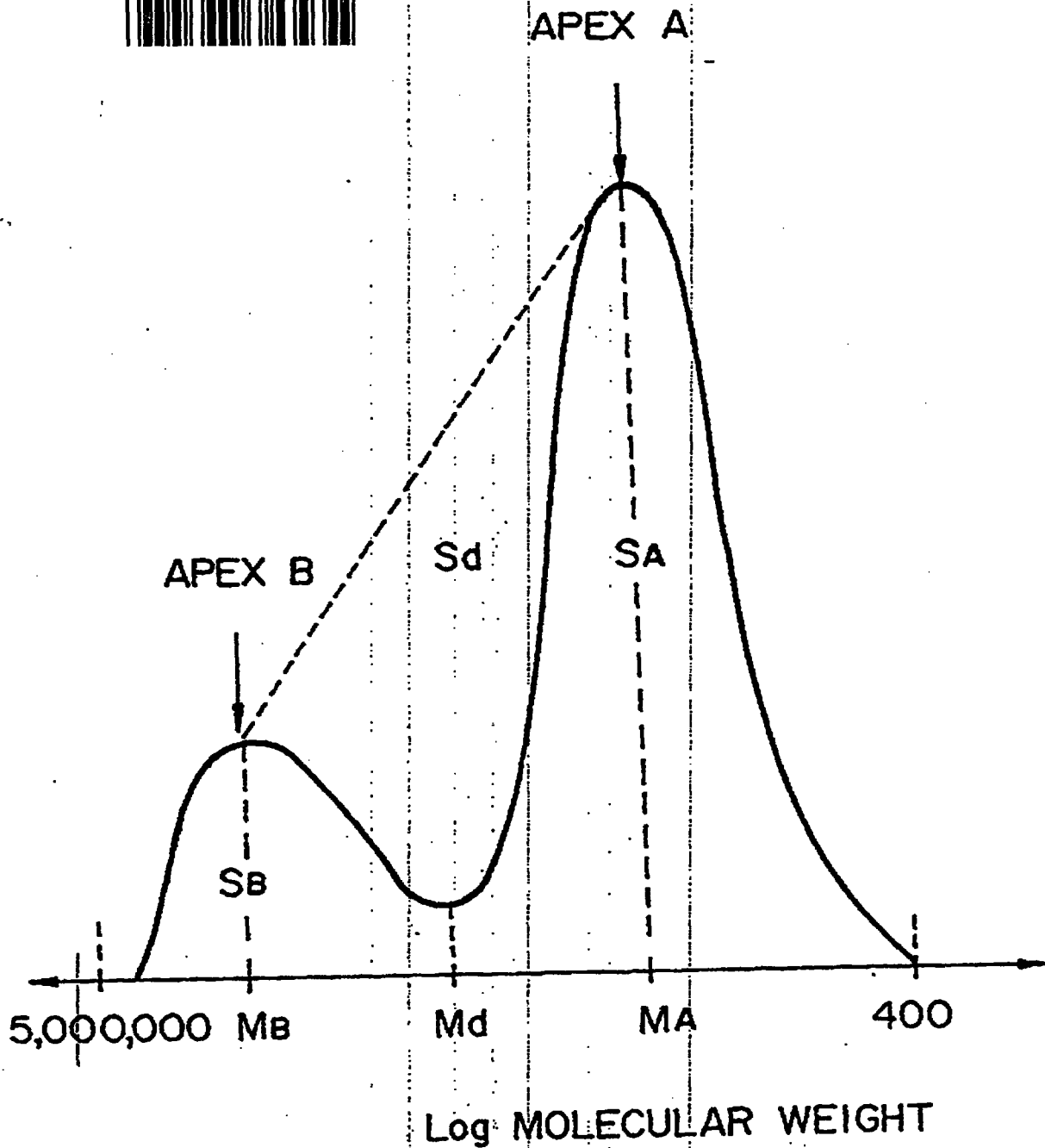


FIG. 2

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

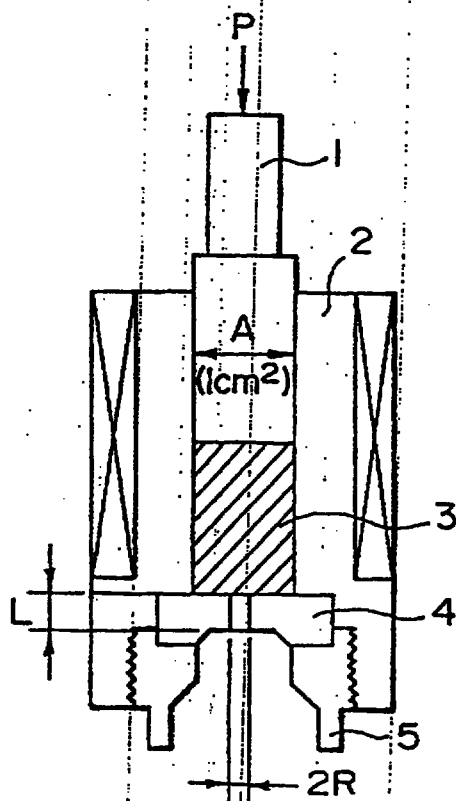


FIG. 3

REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996

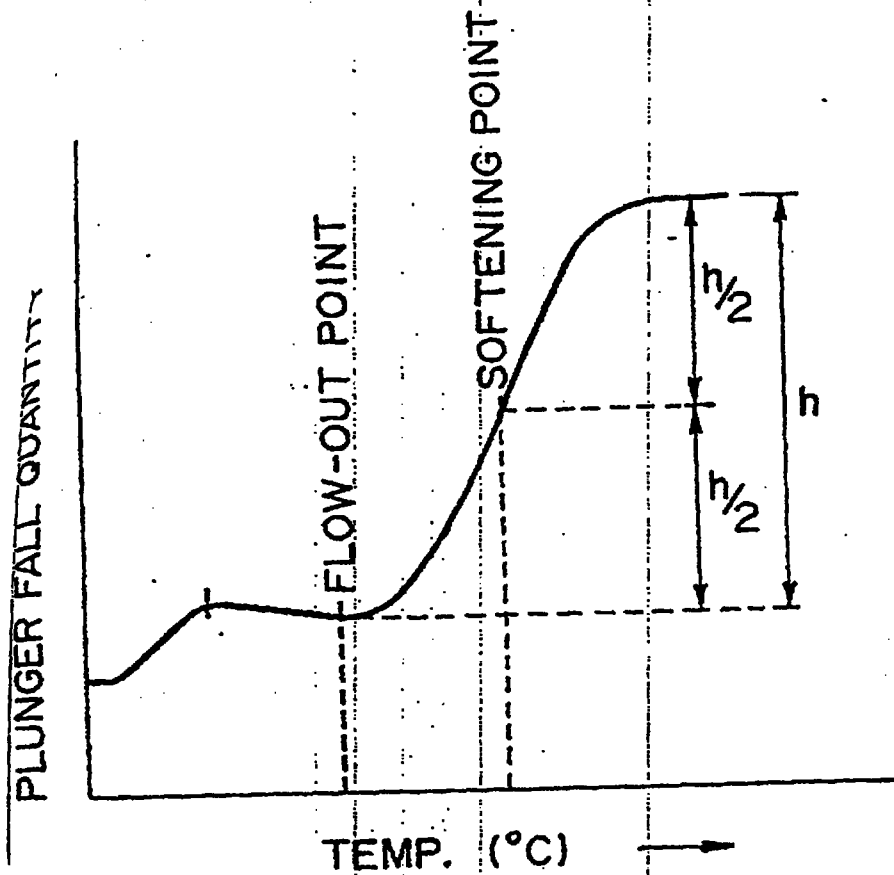
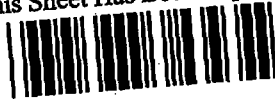
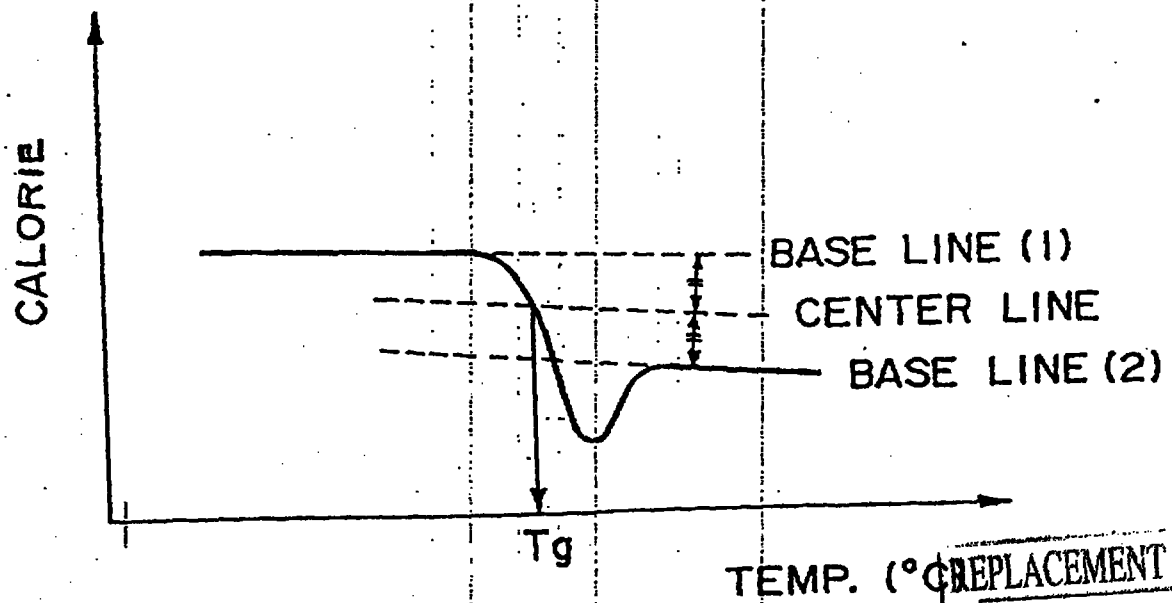


FIG. 4



TEMP. (°C) REPLACEMENT SHEET

25 NOV 1996



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

REPLACEMENT SHEET

07 AUG 1997

960685⁹⁴-2
IPO's

Claims:

1. A toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprising a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt. % based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight (M_w/M_n) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex A corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by Sd.
2. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin contains the THF-insoluble matter in an amount of not more than 5 % by weight.
3. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an M_w/M_n of not less than 20.
4. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an M_w/M_n of from 25 to 60.
5. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 5,000 to 15,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 450,000 to 900,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 30,000 to 300,000.
6. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an MB/MA of from 30 to 120.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

REPLACEMENT SHEET

07 AUG 1997

95

7. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an MB/MA of from 40 to 100.
8. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak other than the MA, in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000.
9. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak other than the MB, in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000.
10. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak other than the Md, in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000.
11. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.7 : 0.4 to 0.7.
12. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.6 : 0.5 to 0.7.
13. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin further comprises a release agent.
14. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent is contained in an amount of from 0.1 % by weight to 20 % by weight based on the binder resin.
15. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent is contained in an amount of from 1 % by weight to 10 % by weight based on the binder resin.
16. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent has a number average molecular weight (Mn) of not more than 1,000, a weight average molecular weight (Mw) of not more than 2,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 3, and a melting point of from 60 to 120°C.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

REPLACEMENT SHEET

07 AUG 1997



96

17. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said release agent has an Mn of from 400 to 700, an Mw of from 500 to 1,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 2.5, and a melting point of from 60 to 100°C, and is contained in an amount of from 1 % by weight to 10 % by weight based on the binder resin.
18. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent comprises a graft-modified wax, a low-molecular weight polyethylene wax, a low-molecular weight ethylene-propylene copolymer, a low-molecular weight polypropylene wax or a paraffin wax.
19. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent comprises a polyolefin wax graft-modified with an aromatic vinyl monomer, an unsaturated fatty acid or an unsaturated fatty acid ester.
20. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has an Mn of not more than 1,000, an Mw of not more than 2,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 30 and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C.
21. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has an Mn of from more than 400 to 700, an Mw of from 700 to 1,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 2.0, and a melting point of from 60 to 100°C.
22. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has a graft component in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 100 parts by weight based on 100 parts by weight of the polyolefin.
23. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has a graft component in an amount of from 1 part by weight to 50 parts by weight based on 100 parts by weight of the polyolefin.
24. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified wax has a melt viscosity of from 1 m Pas (cP) to 250 m Pas (cP) at a temperature of 160°C.
25. A toner for developing an electrostatic image

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

REPLACEMENT SHEET

07 AUG 1997

97

according to Claim 1, wherein;

said binder resin contains i) two kinds of styrene-acrylate copolymers, a low-temperature softening resin and a high-temperature softening resin, and ii) a graft-modified polyolefin; said low-temperature softening resin having a weight average molecular weight (M_w) of from 5.0×10^3 to 3.0×10^4 , a ratio of M_w to a number average molecular weight (M_n) (M_w/M_n) of not more than 3.0, a flow-out point in a flow tester, of from 75°C to 90°C, a softening point of from 80°C to 110°C, and a glass transition point (T_g) of from 55°C to 65°C and being contained in said binder resin in an amount of not less than 65 wt. % said high-temperature softening resin having a weight average molecular weight (M_w) of 4.0×10^5 to 1.5×10^6 , a ratio of M_w to a number average molecular weight (M_n) (M_w/M_n) of not more than 3.0, a flow-out point in a flow tester, of from 110°C to 160°C, a softening point of from 150°C to 230°C, and a glass transition point (T_g) of not less than 55°C; said low-temperature softening resin and said high-temperature softening resin being in a proportion ranging from 50:50 to 90:10 in weight proportion; and said low-temperature softening resin being obtained by solution polymerization, said high-temperature softening resin being obtained by suspension polymerization, and the both being mixed in a solvent capable of dissolving the both; and said graft-modified polyolefin having a number average molecular weight (M_n) of not more than 1.0×10^3 , a weight average molecular weight (M_w) of not more than 2.5×10^3 , an M_w/M_n of not more than 3.0, and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C.

26. A heat fixing method comprising;

imparting a toner image onto a recording medium, wherein a toner that forms said toner image comprises a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt. % based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight (M_w/M_n)

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





* C L M S *

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

98

REPLACEMENT SHEET

07 AUG 1997

of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex A corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by Sd; and heat-fixing said toner image to said recording medium by means of a heater element stationarily supported and a pressure member that stands opposite to said heat element in pressure contact and brings said recording medium into close contact with said heater element through a film interposed between them.

27. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element has a temperature of from 100°C to 300°C.
28. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said toner image is heated with a heater element having a temperature of from 100°C to 300°C, through a film having a thickness of from 1 μ m to 100 μ m.
29. A heat fixing method according to claim 26, wherein said film has a heat resistance.
30. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein said film comprises a layer formed of a polymer selected from the group consisting of polyimide, polyester, polyethylene terephthalate, a tetrafluoroethylene-perfluoroalkyl vinyl ether copolymer, polytetrafluoroethylene and polyamide.
31. A heat fixing method according to claim 29, wherein said film comprises a layer formed of a metal.
32. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





* C L N S *

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

REPLACEMENT SHEET

07 AUG 1997

99

said film has at least one of a release layer and a low-resistance layer.

33. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein said film comprises a layer of a polyimide film and a fluorine resin layer.
34. A heat fixing method according to Claim 33, wherein said fluorine resin layer comprises a conductive material dispersed therein.
35. A heat fixing method according to Claim 34, wherein said fluorine resin layer comprises polytetrafluoroethylene.
36. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said film is brought into pressure contact with said heater element by means of said pressure member under a total pressure of from 4 kg to 20 kg.
37. A heat fixing method according to Claim 36, wherein said pressure member is provided with a pressure roller having a rubber elastic layer.
38. A heat fixing method according to Claim 36, wherein said pressure member is provided with a pressure roller having a elastic layer formed of silicone rubber.
39. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element is heated by applying to a resistance material a current with a pulse-like waveform.
40. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element has a low heat capacitance and has a linear structure.
41. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element is provided with a resistance material and a temperature sensor, and when the heater element temperature detected by the temperature sensor is T_1 , the surface temperature T_2 of the film opposed to said resistance material is about 10°C to about 30°C lower than the temperature T_1 and the surface temperature T_3 of the film on the part at which the film is peeled from a fixed toner image is a temperature substantially equal to the temperature T_2 .
42. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

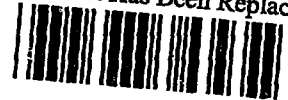
100

REPLACEMENT SHEET

07 AUG 1997

said toner comprises the toner according to any one
of Claims 2 to 25.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

REPLACEMENT SHEET

-101-

9606657-2
IPO's

REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998

ABSTRACT OF THE DISCLOSURE

A toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprises a binder resin and a colorant. Such binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8.

Figure 1

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



REPLACEMENT SHEET
03 JUL 1998

6857-2
IPO's

- 1 -

REPLACEMENT SHEETS SG	
☒ Description	: paged 1 to paged 93
☒ Claim(s)	: paged 94 to paged 105
☒ Drawing(s)	: paged 13 to paged 73
☒ Abstract	: paged 106 to paged 106
DATE OF RECEIPT 3/7/98	

Electrostatic Image Developing Toner and Fixing Method

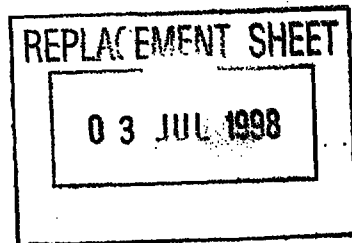
BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Field of the invention

The present invention relates to a toner for developing an electrostatic image, used in an image forming process such as electrophotography, electrostatic recording or magnetic recording, and a method of fixing the toner.

Related Background Art

A number of methods as disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 2,297,691, Japanese Patent Publication Nos. 42-23910 and No. 43-24748 and so forth are conventionally known as electrophotography. In general, copies are obtained by forming an electrostatic latent image on a photosensitive member by utilizing a photoconductive material, subsequently developing the latent image by the use of a toner, and transferring the toner image to a transfer medium such as paper if necessary, followed by fixing by the action of heat, pressure, heat-and-pressure, or solvent vapor. The toner that has not transferred to and has remained on the photosensitive member is cleaned by various means, and then the above process is repeated.



- 2 -

In recent years, such a copying apparatus is not only used as a copying machine for office work to take copies of originals as commonly done, but also has began to be used in the field of printers serving as outputs of computers and in the field of personal copying of private use.

Under such circumstances, the apparatus are severely sought to be made small-sized, lightweight and highly reliable. Copying machines have now been formed of more simple components in various respects. As a result, a high performance has become required for toners, and copying machines are no longer considered excellent unless an improvement in the performance of toners is achieved.

For example, various method or devices have been developed in relation to the step of fixing a toner image to a sheet such as paper. A method most commonly available at present is the pressure heat system using a heat roller.

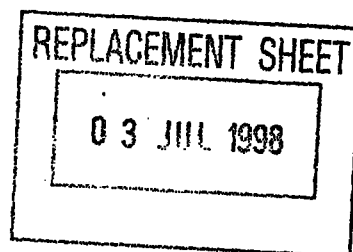
The pressure heat system using a heat roller is a method of carrying out fixing by causing a toner image surface of an image-receiving sheet to pass the surface of a heat roller whose surface is formed of a material having releasability to toner while the former is brought into contact with the latter under application of a pressure. Since in this method the

03 JUL 1998

- 3 -

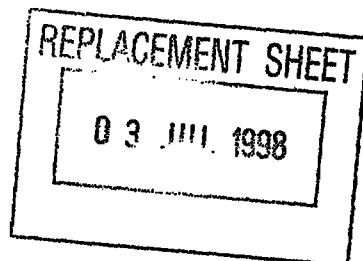
surface of the heat roller comes into contact with the toner image of the image-receiving sheet under application of a pressure, a very good thermal efficiency can be achieved when the toner image is melt-adhered onto the image-receiving sheet, so that fixing can be carried out rapidly. Thus, this method is very effective in a high-speed electrophotographic copying machines. In this method, however, since the surface of the heat roller comes into contact with the toner image under application of a pressure, part of the toner image may sometimes adhere and transfer to the surface of the fixing roller, which is re-transferred to the subsequent image-receiving sheet to cause an offset phenomenon, resulting in a contamination of the image-receiving sheet. Thus, it is considered to be one of essential conditions in the heat roller fixing system that no toner is adhered to the surface of the heat fixing roller.

For the purpose of not causing the toner to adhere to the surface of a fixing roller, a measure has been hitherto taken such that the roller surface is formed of a material such as silicon rubber or a fluorine resin, having an excellent releasability to toner, and, in order to prevent offset and to prevent fatigue of the roller surface, its surface is further covered with a thin film formed using a fluid having a



good releasability as exemplified by silicone oil. However, this method, though effective in view of the prevention of the offset of toner, requires a device for feeding an anti-offset fluid, and hence has the problem that the fixing device becomes complicated.

This is in the opposite direction to the demand for small size and light weight. In some instances, the silicone oil is evaporated by heat to contaminate the interior of the machine. Now, based on the idea that the fluid for preventing offset should be fed from the the inside of a toner without use of any apparatus for feeding silicone oil, a method has been proposed in which a release agent such as a low-molecular polyethylene or a low-molecular polypropylene is added in the toner. Addition of such a release agent in a large quantity in order to attain a sufficient effect may cause filming to the photosensitive member or result in a contamination of the surface of a toner carrying member such as a carrier or a sleeve, so that toner images may be deteriorated to bring about a problem in practical use. Thus the release agent is added in the toner in such a small amount that may not cause the deterioration of toner images, where a releasing oil is fed in a little amount and a device by which the toner that may cause offset is cleaned using a member



such as a web of a wind-up type is used together.

However, taking account of the recent demand for small size, light weight and high reliability, it is necessary and preferred to remove such a supplementary device. Accordingly, no countermeasure can be completely taken unless the fixing performance and anti-offset of the toner are further improved. It is difficult to achieve the improvement unless binder resins for toners are further improved.

As a technique concerning the improvement of binder resins of toners, Japanese Patent Publication No. 51-23354, for example, proposes a toner in which a cross-linked polymer is used as a binder resin. According to the method disclosed therein, the toner is effective for the improvement in anti-offset and wind-around resistance, but on the other hand an increase in the degree of cross-linking results in an increase in the fixing temperature. Hence it is difficult to obtain a toner having a sufficiently low fixing temperature, a superiority in anti-offset and wind-around resistance, and a sufficient fixing performance. In general, in order to improve the fixing performance, the binder resin must be made to have a low molecular weight to lower its softening point. This conflicts with the measure for the improvement of anti-offset. Since the binder resin is

REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998

made to have a low softening point, the glass transition point of the resin is necessarily lowered to bring about an undesirable phenomenon that blocking of toner occurs during storage.

To cope with this problem, Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 55-158340 proposes a toner containing a binder resin comprised of a low-molecular weight polymer and a high-molecular weight polymer. This binder resin can achieve an improvement in respect of fixing performance, but can not still be satisfactory in respect of anti-offset. It is difficult for this toner to highly satisfy the anti-offset and fixing performance.

Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 58-203453 proposes a toner containing a binder resin comprised of a low-temperature softening resin and a high-temperature softening resin. This binder resin can achieve an improvement in respect of fixing performance, but can not still be satisfactory in respect of anti-offset. It is difficult for this toner to highly satisfy the anti-offset and fixing performance.

Japanese Patent Publication No. 60-20411 proposes a process for producing a resin composition comprising a polymer with a low degree of polymerization and a polymer with a high degree of

03 JUL 1998

- 7 -

polymerization. When this resin is used as a binder resin for a toner, the resin tends to achieve an improvement in respect of fixing performance, but can not still be satisfactory in respect of anti-offset. Thus there is much room for improvement.

In relation to a toner containing a binder resin comprised of a blend of a low-molecular weight polymer and a cross-linked polymer, Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 58-86558, for example, proposes a toner comprising a low-molecular weight polymer and an insoluble infusible high-molecular weight polymer as main resin components. According to the method disclosed therein, the fixing performance and grindability tend to be improved. However, it is difficult to satisfy in a high performance both the anti-offset and the grindability, because the weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight (M_w/M_n) of the low-molecular weight polymer is as small as not more than 3.5 and the content of the insoluble infusible high-molecular weight polymer is as large as from 40 to 90 wt.%. Thus, it is very difficult from a practical viewpoint to give a toner well satisfying the fixing performance (in particular, in high-speed fixing), the offset resistance and the grindability unless a fixing assembly is provided with a device for feeding an anti-offset fluid. Moreover,

03 JUL 1998

- 8 -

the toner must be heat-kneaded at a temperature far higher than that in usual instances or heat-kneaded at a high shear, because the insoluble infusible high-molecular weight polymer used in a larger amount turns to have a very high melt viscosity as a result of the heat-kneading carried out when the toner is prepared. As a result, in the instance where it is kneaded at a high temperature, the toner characteristics may be lowered because of thermal decomposition of other additives. In the instance where it is kneaded at a high shear, the molecules of the binder resin may be excessively cut. Thus, there is the problem that the desired anti-offset can be achieved with difficulty.

Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 60-166958 proposes a toner comprising a resin composition obtained by polymerizing monomers in the presence of a low-molecular poly(α -methylstyrene) having a number average molecular weight (M_n) of from 500 to 1,500.

In particular, this publication discloses that the number average molecular weight (M_n) may preferably be in the range of from 9,000 to 30,000. With an increase in M_n for the purpose of improving anti-offset, the fixing performance of the toner and the grindability at the time the toner is prepared may become more questionable from a practical viewpoint. Hence it is difficult to satisfy in a high performance

03 JUL 1998

- 9 -

both the anti-offset and the grindability. Thus, the toner having a poor grindability at the time the toner is prepared brings about a lowering of production efficiency, and also coarse toner particles tend to be included into the toner, undesirably resulting in black spots around a toner image.

Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 56-16144 proposes a toner containing a binder resin component having at least one maximum value in each region of a molecular weight of from 10^3 to 8×10^4 and a molecular weight of from 10^5 to 2×10^6 , in the molecular weight distribution measured by gel permeation chromatography (GPC). The toner, however, is sought to be further improved in fixing performance and anti-offset.

Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 63-223662 proposes a toner comprising a binder resin i) containing 10 to 60 wt.% of a THF(tetrahydrofuran)-insoluble matter, based on the binder resin, ii) having a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight (M_w/M_n) of ≥ 5 , a peak in the region of a molecular weight of from 2,000 to 10,000 and a peak or shoulder in the region of a molecular weight of from 15,000 to 100,000, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC of a THF-soluble matter, and iii) containing a component with a

03 JUL 1998

- 10 -

molecular weight of not more than 10,000 in an amount of from 10 to 50 % by weight in the binder resin. In this instance, the resin can bring about a superiority in the grindability, fixing performance, filming or melt-adhesion resistance to a photosensitive member, image forming performance, and anti-offset (in particular, anti-offset at the high-temperature side), but is sought to achieve a further improvement in the anti-offset and fixing performance of the toner. In particular, it is difficult for this resin to cope with the severe condition that both the fixing performance at a low temperature and the anti-offset at a high temperature are required to be simultaneously satisfied.

In addition, it is very difficult to achieve both the properties concerned with fixing and the grindability at a high performance. In particular, the grindability required when toners are prepared is an important factor for the recent trend in which toners are made to have a smaller particle diameter on account of the demand for a higher quality level, higher resolution and higher fine-line reproduction of copied images, and the improvement in the grindability is very important from the viewpoint of energy since a very large energy is required in the step of grinding.

The phenomenon that toner is melt-adhered to

03 JUL 1998

- 11 -

the inner wall of a grinding apparatus tends to occur in a toner having a good fixing performance, therefore bringing about a poor grinding efficiency. In the process of copying, there is the step of cleaning the toner having remained on a photosensitive member after transfer. Nowadays, from the viewpoint of making apparatus small-sized, light weight and highly reliable, it has become common to carry out cleaning by the use of a blade (i.e., blade cleaning). As photosensitive members have a longer lifetime, photosensitive member drums are made small-sized and systems are made high-speed, the melt-adhesion resistance and filming resistance to photosensitive members have been more strictly required in toners. In particular, amorphous silicon photosensitive members having been recently put into practical use are very highly durable, and also organic photoconductive photosensitive members (OPCs) have longer lifetimes. Hence, the performances required in toners have become higher.

In order to make apparatus small-sized, components must be so designed as to be successfully assembled. This makes small the space through which the air flows. In addition, heat sources for a fixing assembly and an exposure system come very near to a toner hopper or a cleaner. As a result, toner is

03 JUL 1998

- 12 -

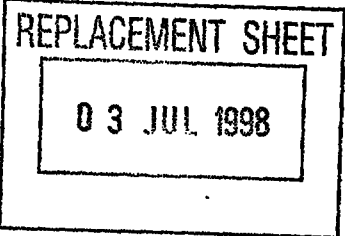
exposed to a high-temperature atmosphere. Hence, no toner can any longer be put into practical use unless it has a better blocking resistance.

For example, the performances required in toners conflict with each other in almost all properties, as in fixing performance and blocking resistance, and yet it is increasingly sought and studied to satisfy all of them in a high performance. No satisfactory results, however, have been obtained.

As previously stated, as a method of fixing a visible image of toner to a recording medium, the heat-roll fixing system is widely used, in which a recording medium retaining thereon a toner visible image having not been fixed is heated while it is held and carried between a heat roller maintained at a given temperature and a pressure roller having an elastic layer and coming into pressure contact with the heat roller.

The heat-roll fixing, however, has the following problems that should be settled.

- (1) A waiting time (a time during which an image-forming operation is prohibited) is required until the heating roller reaches the given temperature.
- (2) The heating roller must be maintained at a proper temperature in order to prevent poor fixing caused by the variations of heat-roller temperatures



- 13 -

that may occur when the recording medium is passed or because of other external factors, and also to prevent the phenomenon of offset of toner on the heating roller. This makes it necessary to make large the heat capacity of the heating roller or a heater element, which requires a large electric power.

(3) After the recording medium has been passed over the heating roller and discharged, the recording medium and the toner on the recording medium are slowly cooled because of a high temperature of the heating roller and also because of the atmospheric temperature having become higher, resulting in a state in which a high adhesion of the toner is maintained. Thus, there may often occur offset, or paper jam caused by the winding of the recording medium around the roller.

It is earnestly sought to realize a fixing method that has solved such problems, and may require only a short waiting time and a low consumption of electric power while achieving excellent performance of fixing a toner latent image to a recording medium and excellent anti-offset. Such a fixing method greatly depends on toner properties, and one of the important properties is the low-temperature fixing performance of toner.

As means for preventing occurrence of the

03 JUL 1998

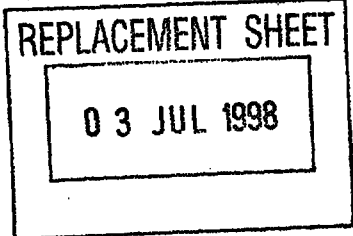
offset phenomenon, the following methods are known as previously stated: (i) The method in which the fixing is carried out while applying a release agent such as silicone oil to the surface of a heating roller, (ii) the method in which a high-molecular weight polymer is used as a binder resin for toner, and (iii) the method in which a wax having release properties is incorporated in a toner.

In the method (i), however, the oil is heated to generate a smell, and also a device for feeding the oil becomes necessary to bring about the problem that the fixing device becomes complicated in structure.

In the method (ii), although the anti-offset of the toner can be improved, it is difficult to achieve the low-temperature fixing because of a concurrent rise of the melting temperature of the toner.

In respect of the method (iii), Japanese Patent Publications No. 52-3304, No. 52-3305, No. 57-52574, No. 53-155655 and No. 58-12580, for example, disclose toners comprising a styrene resin and a specific release agent.

Under existing circumstances, however, these toners can achieve an improvement particularly in regard to the high-temperature side offset phenomenon, but little improvement in respect of the low-temperature



- 15 -

fixing performance. When such a release agent is used in a binder having a low-temperature melting properties, it is difficult for the release agent to have the releasing effect at a low temperature, tending to cause a low-temperature offset phenomenon. This causes a lowering of fixing performance, resulting in no achievement of low-temperature fixing performance.

To prevent the high-temperature side offset phenomenon, methods are known in which a high-molecular weight polymer is incorporated in a binder resin. The methods are disclosed, for example, in Japanese Patent Applications Laid-open No. 50-134652, No. 54-114245, No. 56-16144, No. 56-158340 and No. 58-203453,

Most of the toners used in these methods have achieved an improvement in the high-temperature side offset phenomenon, but are sought to be further improved in respect of the low-temperature fixing performance. On the other hand, the low-temperature fixing performance have been achieved to a certain extent in some of these methods. A further improvement, however, is sought in respect of development performance and blocking resistance.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

An object of the present invention is to

REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998

provide a toner that has solved the above problems.

Another object of the present invention is to provide a toner that can be fixed at a low temperature and also has anti-offset in a broad temperature region of from low temperatures to high temperatures.

Still another object of the present invention is to provide a toner that may cause no melt-adhesion and filming to a photosensitive member in a high-speed system even after use for a long period of time.

A further object of the present invention is to provide a toner that has a superior blocking resistance and particularly can be well used even in a high-temperature atmosphere in a small-sized machine.

A still further object of the present invention is to provide a toner that can be continuously produced in a good efficiency because of no melt-adhesion of a ground product to the inner wall of an apparatus in the course of grinding.

According to the present invention, there is provided a toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprising a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight

03 JUL 1998

- 17 -

average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex A (apexA) corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B (apexB) corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by Sd.

According to another aspect of the present invention, there is provided a heat fixing method comprising;

imparting a toner image onto a recording medium; wherein a toner that forms said toner image comprises a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said

03 JUL 1998

- 18 -

binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex A (apexA) corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B (apexB) corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by Sd; and

heat-fixing said toner image to said recording medium by means of a heater element stationarily

03 JUL 1998

- 19 -

supported and a pressure member that stands opposite to said heat element in pressure contact and brings said recording medium into close contact with said heater element through a film interposed between them.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is a schematic illustration of an example of a fixing device used for carrying out the fixing method of the present invention.

Fig. 2 illustrates a molecular weight distribution curve obtained by GPC.

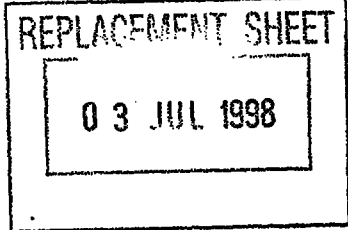
Fig. 3 is a schematic illustration of an overhead-type flow tester.

Fig. 4 shows a flow tester flow-out curve (a plunger fall quantity-temperature curve).

Fig. 5 illustrates a DSC curve for determining T_g using a DSC (differential scanning calorimeter).

DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

The present inventors made intensive studies in order to achieve the objects stated above. As a result, they have discovered that the objects can be achieved when the binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% and also has a specific constitution in respect of the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC of a



THF-soluble matter.

They have also discovered that the effect of the present invention becomes remarkable when the toner contains a release agent having a specific molecular weight and molecular weight distribution and also has a specific melting point.

They have further discovered that the objects can be better achieved particularly when the binder resin is prepared by mixing a low-molecular weight polymer and a high-molecular weight polymer in a solvent and thereafter removing the solvent.

In regard to the heat-fixing of a toner visible image to a recording medium, they have discovered that the toner is suitable for, besides conventional heat roll fixing devices, a heat fixing system wherein a toner visible image is heat-fixed to a recording medium by means of a heater element stationarily supported and a pressure member that stands opposite to said heater element in pressure contact and brings said recording medium into close contact with said heater element through a film interposed between them.

The binder resin that constitutes the above toner contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.%, and preferably not less than 5 wt.%, based on the binder resin. A THF-insoluble

03 JUL 1998

- 21 -

matter contained in an amount more than 10 wt.% can contribute an improvement in anti-offset but tends to result in a lowering of fixing performance, making it difficult to highly satisfy the both.

The binder resin, when its THF-soluble matter is measured by GPC, may preferably have a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight (M_w/M_n) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by Sd. It is difficult to achieve the objects of the present

03 JUL 1998

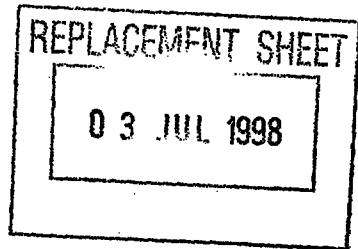
- 22 -

invention if the above conditions are not satisfied.

Fig. 2 shows the results from a GPC chromatogram.

The average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) should be not less than 18, preferably not less than 20, and more preferably in the range of from 25 to 60. If the $\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$ is less than 18, the fixing performance tends to be improved but the anti-offset is lowered.

The binder resin has one molecular weight peak and another molecular weight peak (MB and MA) in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000 and in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, respectively, and a molecular weight minimum in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150. In a preferred embodiment, the binder resin has one molecular weight peak and another molecular weight peak in the region of a molecular weight of from 5,000 to 15,000 and in the region of a molecular weight of from 450,000 to 900,000, respectively, and a molecular weight minimum in the region of a molecular weight of from 30,000 to 300,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 40 to 100. If it has the molecular weight minimum only in the region of the molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, the fixing performance can be



- 23 -

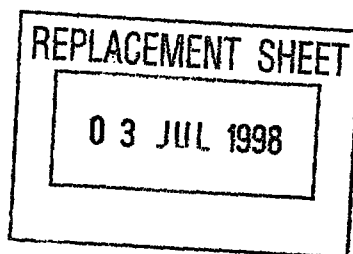
improved but the anti-offset becomes clearly poor. If the molecular weight peak MA is less than 3,000, the blocking resistance becomes poor to tend to cause filming or melt-adhesion to a photosensitive member. On the other hand, if the MA is more than 20,000, the fixing performance may become poor. If the molecular weight peak MB is less than 380,000, the anti-offset becomes poor to tend to bring about a melt-adhered product in a device in the course of grinding. If it is more than 1,000,000, the fixing performance may become poor, and also the grindability tends to become poor, resulting in a lowering of productivity.

The molecular weight peak ratio MB/MA should be in the range of from 30 to 150, preferably from 30 to 120, and more preferably from 40 to 100.

If the MB/MA is less than 30 or more than 150, it becomes difficult to highly satisfy both the fixing performance and anti-offset.

In the case when two or more molecular weight peaks are present in the region of the molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, the molecular weight corresponding to the position of a higher or highest peak among the peaks in the GPC chromatogram is regarded as the MA.

Similarly, in the case when two or more molecular weight peaks are present in the region of

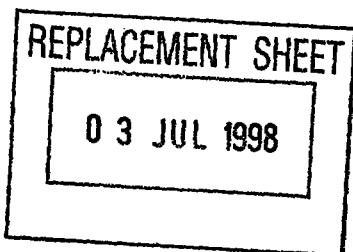


the molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, the molecular weight corresponding to the position of a higher or highest peak among the peaks in the GPC chromatogram is regarded as the MB.

In the case when two or more molecular weight minimums are present in the region of the molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, the molecular weight corresponding to the position of a lower or lowest minimum among the molecular weight minimums in the GPC chromatogram is regarded as the Md.

The molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd should be 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8, preferably 1 : 0.3 to 0.7 : 0.4 to 0.7, and more preferably 1 : 0.3 to 0.6 : 0.5 to 0.7. If the SB is less than 0.3, the anti-offset tends to be lowered, and if it is more than 0.8, the fixing performance and also the grindability tend to become poor. If the Sd is less than 0.35, the fixing performance and/or the anti-offset tend to be lowered, and if it is more than 0.8, the anti-offset tends to become poor.

The release agent preferably used in the toner of the present invention may preferably have a number average molecular weight of not more than 1,000, a weight average molecular weight of not more than 2,500, a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\overline{M}_w/\overline{M}_n$) of not more than 3.



- 25 -

and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C. In a preferred embodiment, the toner contains a release agent in an amount of from 0.1 wt.% to 20 wt.% based on the binder resin. In a more preferred embodiment, the release agent has a number average molecular weight of from 400 to 700, a weight average molecular weight of from 500 to 1,500, an $\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$ of not more than 2.5 and a melting point of from 60°C to 100°C. The release agent may more preferably be contained in an amount of from 1 wt.% to 10 wt.% based on the binder resin.

If the release agent used in the toner of the present invention does not satisfy the above conditions, e.g., if the melting point is higher than 120°C, the fixing performance is adversely affected, and if it is lower than 60°C, the anti-offset and the blocking resistance of the toner are adversely affected. If the release agent is contained in an amount more than 20 wt.%, the blocking resistance and fixing performance tend to be adversely affected when the toner is left in a high-temperature environment, and if it is less than 0.1 wt.%, the effect of preventing offset of toner tends to be insufficient.

The binder resin used in the toner of the present invention may preferably be prepared by mixing in a solvent a polymer A having a weight average

REPLACEMENT SHEET

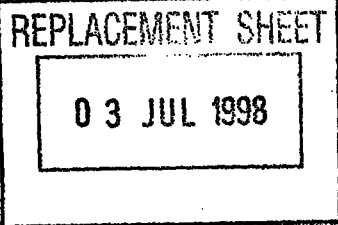
03 JUL 1998

- 26 -

molecular weight of from 5,000 to 30,000 and a polymer B having a weight average molecular weight of from 400,000 to 1,500,000 and thereafter removing the solvent. It may more preferably be prepared by mixing in a solvent a polymer A having a weight average molecular weight of from 7,000 to 25,000 and a polymer B having a weight average molecular weight of from 450,000 to 1,000,000 and thereafter removing the solvent. The solvent may be any of those capable of dissolving the polymer A and polymer B. It includes, for example, toluene, xylene and 2-propanol.

In preparing the binder resin used in the toner of the present invention, the polymer A may preferably be prepared by solution polymerization or suspension polymerization, and the polymer B by suspension polymerization or emulsion polymerization. More preferably the polymer A should be prepared by solution polymerization and the polymer B by suspension polymerization.

In order to prepare a uniformly dispersed binder resin, the binder resin may preferably be prepared by mixing the polymers A and B in the solvent and thereafter removing the solvent. It is difficult to obtain a binder resin in a uniformly dispersed state if prepared by a method wherein materials are heated, melted and mixed using a kneader. Such a



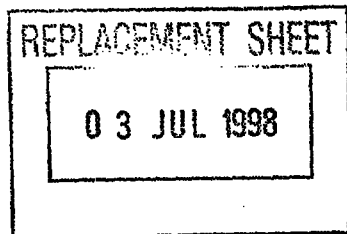
- 27 -

method makes it difficult to satisfy both the fixing performance and anti-offset as aimed in the present invention, and tends to cause the formation of a melt-adhered product on a photosensitive member or the melt-adhesion of a ground product to the inner wall of a device in the course of grinding, thus being not preferred.

If the polymer A has a weight average molecular weight of less than 5,000, the anti-offset is lowered and the grindability at the time of the manufacture of toners is also lowered. If it has a weight average molecular weight of more than 30,000, the fixing performance is lowered.

If the polymer B has a weight average molecular weight of less than 400,000, the grindability tends to become poor, also undesirably causing a lowering of anti-offset, a lowering of blocking resistance and the formation of a melt-adhered product on a photosensitive member. If it has a weight average molecular weight of more than 1,500,000, the grindability is lowered.

It is difficult to achieve the objects of the present invention when the polymers A and B are each used alone as a binder resin for a toner. The objects can be better achieved by the method in which the polymers A and B are mixed in a solvent and thereafter



- 28 -

the solvent is removed than the method in which they are melted and mixed. The polymer B makes it possible to preferably satisfy the mutually conflicting performances such as the anti-offset, the low-temperature fixing performance and the grindability at the time of the manufacture of toners, when the toner is prepared by the method of the present invention.

The THF-insoluble matter referred to in the present invention indicates the weight proportion of a polymer component that has become insoluble to THF (i.e., a giant molecule polymer or a cross-linked polymer) in a resin composition in the toner. The THF-insoluble matter is measured in the following way.

A toner sample is weighed in an amount of from 0.5 to 1.0 g (W_1 g), which is then put in a cylindrical filter paper (for example, No. 86R, available from Toyo Roshi K.K.) and set on a Soxhlet extractor. Extraction is carried out for 6 hours using from 100 to 200 ml. of THF as a solvent, and the soluble component extracted by the use of the solvent is evaporated, followed by vacuum drying at 100°C for several hours. Then the THF-soluble resin component is weighed (W_2 g). The weight of insoluble components other than the resin components, such as a magnetic material and a pigment contained in the toner, is represented by W_3 g. The THF-insoluble matter is

REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998

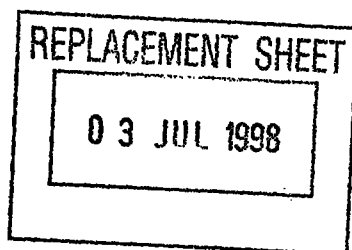
- 29 -

determined from the following expression.

$$\text{THF-insoluble matter (\%)} = W_1 - (W_3 + W_2) / (W_1 - W_3) \times 100$$

In the present invention, the molecular weight at the peak and/or shoulder on the chromatogram obtained by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) is/are measured under the following conditions.

Columns are stabilized in a heat chamber heated to 40°C. To the columns kept at this temperature, THF (tetrahydrofuran) as a solvent is flowed at a flow rate of 1 ml per minute, and from 50 to 200 μ l of a THF sample solution of a resin prepared to have a sample concentration of from 0.05 to 0.6 wt.% is injected therein to make measurement. In measuring the molecular weight of the sample, the molecular weight distribution ascribed to the sample is calculated from the relationship between the logarithmic value of a calibration curve prepared using several kinds of monodisperse polystyrene standard samples and the count number for flow-out time. As the standard polystyrene samples used for the preparation of the calibration curve, it is suitable to use, for example, samples with molecular weights of 6×10^2 , 2.1×10^3 , 4×10^3 , 1.75×10^4 , 5.1×10^4 , 1.1×10^5 , 3.9×10^5 , 8.6×10^5 , 2×10^6 25 and 4.48×10^6 , which are available from Pressure Chemical Co. or Toyo Soda Manufacturing Co., Ltd., and



- 30 -

to use at least about 10 standard polystyrene samples. An RI (refractive index) detector is used as a detector.

Columns may preferably be used in combination of a plurality of commercially available polystyrene gel columns so that the regions of molecular weights of from 10^3 to 2×10^6 can be accurately measured. For example, they may preferably comprise a combination of μ -Styragel 500, 10^3 , 10^4 and 10^5 , available from Waters Co.; Shodex KF-80M or a combination of KF-802, 803, 804 and 805, available from Showa Denko K.K.; or a combination of TSKgel G1000H, G2000H, G2500H, G3000H, G4000H, G5000H, G6000H, G7000H and GMH, available from Toyo Soda Manufacturing Co., Ltd.

In the working examples as described later, the molecular weight distribution of the binder resin is measured under the following conditions.

Condition for measurement by GPC:

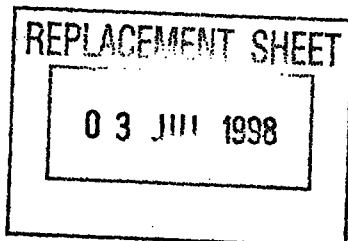
Apparatus: LC-GPC, 150C (Waters Co.)

Column: KF801-KF807 (Showdex Co.)

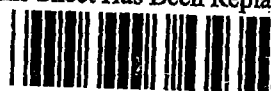
Column temperature: 28 to 30°C

Solvent: Tetrahydrofuran (THF)

The molecular weight distribution possessed by a sample is calculated from the relation between a logarithmic value, measured under the above



This Sheet Has Been Replaced



- 31 -

conditions, of a calibration curve prepared using a polystyrene standard sample and the number of count measured under the above conditions.

The SA, SB and Sd of the molecular weight distribution curve in the binder resin used in the toner of the present invention are determined by calculating the weight ratios of a sample cut out from a chromatogram obtained by GPC and calculating the area ratios thereof.

In the working examples as described later, the molecular weight distribution of the release agent is measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) under the following conditions.

Apparatus: LC-GPC, 150C (Waters Co.)

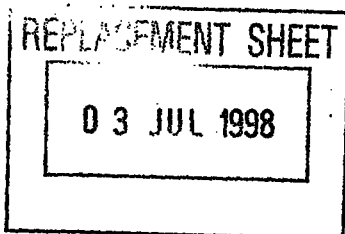
Column: GMH6 (Toyo Soda Manufacturing Co., Ltd.), 60 cm

Column temperature: 140°C

Solvent: o-dichlorobenzene

The molecular weight distribution possessed by a sample is calculated from the relation between a logarithmic value measured under the above conditions, of a calibration curve prepared using a polyethylene standard sample and the number of count.

In the present invention, the melting point of the release agent is measured using a differential scanning calorimeter DSC-7 (manufactured by Perkin-



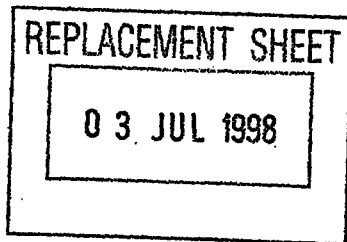
Elmer Co.) to determine an endothermic peak of the sample, which peak is regarded as a maximum melting peak value.

Fig. 5 shows an example of the endothermic peak in the DSC.

In the toner of the present invention, the binder resin may preferably contain i) two kinds of styrene-acrylate copolymers, a low-temperature softening resin and a high-temperature softening resin, and ii) a low-melting graft-modified polyolefin release agent.

The low-temperature softening resin may have an Mw of from 5.0×10^3 to 3.0×10^4 , and preferably from 5.0×10^3 to 2.0×10^4 , a ratio of Mw to Mn (Mw/Mn) of not more than 3.0, a flow-out point (herein the temperature at which the resin begins to flow out) in a flow tester, of from 75°C to 90°C, a softening point of from 80°C to 110°C, and a glass transition point (hereinafter "Tg") of from 55°C to 70°C, preferably from 55°C to 65°C. The high-temperature softening resin may have an Mw of from 4.0×10^5 to 1.5×10^6 , an Mw/Mn of not more than 3.0, a flow-out point of from 110°C to 160°C, a softening point of from 150°C to 230°C, and Tg of not less than 55°C.

If the Mw of the low-temperature softening resin is less than 5.0×10^3 , the blocking resistance



- 33 -

of the toner may be seriously deteriorated, the storage stability may be damaged, and the phenomenon of melt-adhesion of the toner to a photosensitive member may occur at the time of development to tend to adversely affect fixed images. If the M_w is more than 3.0×10^4 , it becomes difficult to achieve the desired low-temperature fixing performance, also resulting in an increase in the power consumption required for the fixing of the toner to a recording medium. When the M_w/M_n of the low-temperature softening resin is controlled to be not more than 3.0, the low-temperature fixing performance can be improved.

If the flow-out point of the low-temperature softening resin in a flow tester is lower than 75°C, the blocking resistance of the toner may be seriously deteriorated. On the other hand, if it is higher than 90°C, it becomes difficult to achieve the low-temperature fixing performance when used in combination with the high-temperature softening resin.

If the softening point of the low-temperature softening resin is lower than 80°C, an excessive melt-adhesion of the toner tends to occur in the step of heat fixing even when used in combination with the high-temperature softening resin, tending to bring about the disadvantages that fixed-image surfaces become glossy, toner materials penetrate into or

REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998

- 34 -

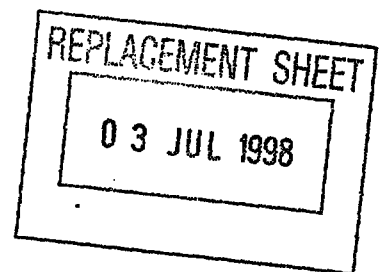
strike through a recording medium such as transfer paper, and images are blurred because of the spread of a molten toner. If the softening point is higher than 110°C, it becomes difficult to achieve the low-temperature fixing performance, also resulting in an increase in the power consumption required for the fixing of the toner to a recording medium.

Use of the specific low-temperature softening resin as described above enables achievement of a good low-temperature fixing performance.

On the other hand, as a result of intensive studies made by the present inventors on the offset phenomenon, the low-temperature softening resin was found to be preferably contained in an amount of not less than 50 wt.%, more preferably not less than 65 wt.%, and most preferably not less than 70 wt.%, based on the total weight of the binder resin, in order to bring out the low-temperature fixing performance attributable to the low-temperature softening resin component.

The high-temperature softening resin is sought to prevent the offset phenomenon by its addition in a very small amount.

It has been made clear that the resin used in combination with the above low-temperature softening resin for the purpose of preventing the offset



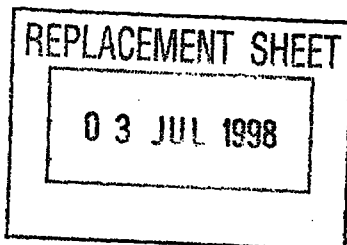
- 35 -

phenomenon must be the high-temperature softening resin extremely different in molecular weight and melt viscosity characteristics from the low-temperature softening resin.

In the present invention, if the Mw of the high-temperature softening resin is less than 4.0×10^5 , the offset phenomenon tends to occur when this resin is used in combination with the low-temperature softening resin in such a proportion that enables low-temperature fixing. On the other hand, if it is more than 1.5×10^6 , the low-temperature fixing performance tends to be damaged.

If the flow-out temperature of the high-temperature softening resin in a flow tester is lower than 110°C or the softening point is lower than 150°C , the offset phenomenon tends to occur when this resin is used in combination with the low-temperature softening resin in such a proportion that enables low-temperature fixing. On the other hand, if the flow-out temperature is higher than 160°C or the softening point is higher than 230°C , the low-temperature fixing performance tends to be damaged.

The high-temperature softening resin may have a Tg of not lower than 55°C , preferably from 60°C to 70°C , and more preferably from 65 to 70°C . This is due to the fact that, when materials are melt-kneaded



- 36 -

in the manufacture of toners, polymeric molecular chains are cut to decrease the molecular weight of the polymeric component, and hence, if the T_g is lower than 55°C , the melt-adhesion of the toner to a photosensitive member tends to occur at the time of development.

The low-temperature softening resin and high-temperature softening resin contained in the binder resin may be in a proportion ranging from 50:50 to 90:10, preferably 65:35 to 90:10, in wt. %.

If the amount of the low-temperature softening resin is less than 50 wt. % and also the amount of the high-temperature softening resin is more than 50 wt. %, it becomes difficult to achieve the low-temperature fixing performance. On the other hand, if the amount of the low-temperature softening resin is more than 90 wt. % and the amount of the high-temperature softening resin is less than 10 wt. %, the offset phenomenon tends to occur to adversely affect fixed images.

If the amount of the low-temperature softening resin is more than 50 wt. %, the grindability at the time the toner is prepared tends to be seriously lowered to lower the production efficiency of the toner.

An additional feature in the constitution of the toner of the present invention is that the

03 JUL 1998

- 37 -

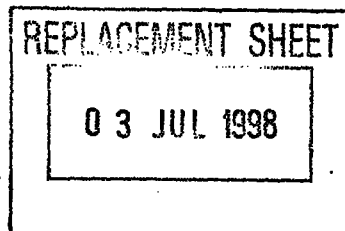
low-temperature softening resin of the binder resin is obtained by solution polymerization, and the high-temperature softening resin by suspension polymerization, and that the both are mixed in a solvent capable of dissolving the both.

Suspension polymerization and emulsion polymerization are available in order to obtain the high-temperature softening resin having the molecular weight distribution and melt viscosity characteristics as described above. In the emulsion polymerization, however, it is difficult to prevent an emulsifying agent from remaining, resulting in a lowering of toner characteristics.

It is preferred for the low-temperature softening resin to be synthesized by solution polymerization taking account of its solution mixture with the high-temperature softening resin, carried out after completion of the polymerization.

The mixing of the low-temperature softening resin and the high-temperature softening resin is carried out by solution mixing. Other mixing methods can not achieve uniform mixture to adversely affect toner characteristics.

The solution mixing makes it possible to remove remaining monomers when the step of removing the solvent is taken.



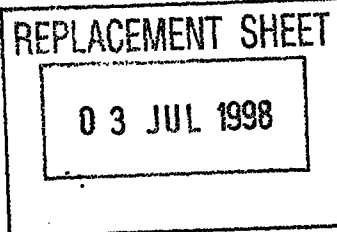
- 38 -

The melting characteristics of the binder resin can be measured using an overhead-type flow tester as illustrated in Fig. 3 (Shimadzu Flow Tester CFT-500 Type). In the first place, about 1.0 g of a sample 3 molded using a pressure molder is extruded from a nozzle 4 of 1 mm in diameter and 1 mm in length under application of a load of 20 kgf using a plunger 1 at a temperature rising rate of 5.0°C/min, during which the fall quantity of the plunger of the flow tester is measured.

Here, when the height of an S-shaped curve in the plunger fall quantity-temperature curve of the flow tester (see the flow tester flow-out curve shown in Fig. 4) is represented by "h", the temperature at a point of h/2 is regarded as the softening point and the temperature at which the sample begins to flow out is regarded as the flow-out point or temperature.

The T_g is measured in the following way: Using a DSC curve obtained at the time of the second temperature rise, the temperature corresponding to the position of the point at which, as shown in Fig. 5, the center line between a base line (1) before the endothermic peak and a base line (2) after the endothermic peak intersects the rising curve is regarded as the T_g.

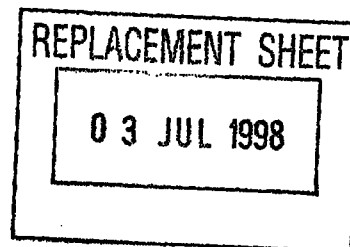
The T_g in the present invention is measured



- 39 -

using a differential scanning calorimeter DSC-7 (manufactured by Perkin-Elmer Co.), at a temperature rising rate of 10°C/min and according to ASTM (D3418-82).

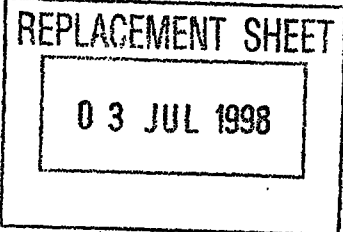
The resin composition in the toner of the present invention may preferably be those obtained by polymerizing at least one kind of monomers selected from styrenes, acrylic acids, methacrylic acids and derivatives thereof. These are preferable in view of development properties and triboelectric properties. As for examples of monomers that can be used, the styrenes include styrene, α -methylstyrene, vinyltoluene, and chlorostyrene. The acrylic acids, methacrylic acids and derivatives thereof include acrylic acid and acrylates such as methyl acrylate, ethyl acrylate, propyl acrylate, butyl acrylate, octyl acrylate, 2-ethylhexyl acrylate, n-tetradecyl acrylate, n-hexadecyl acrylate, lauryl acrylate, cyclohexyl acrylate, diethylaminoethyl acrylate, and dimethylaminoethyl acrylate; methacrylic acid and methacrylates such as methyl methacrylate, ethyl methacrylate, propyl methacrylate, butyl methacrylate, amyl methacrylate, hexyl methacrylate, 2-ethylhexyl methacrylate, octyl methacrylate, decyl methacrylate, dodecyl methacrylate, lauryl methacrylate, cyclohexyl methacrylate, phenyl methacrylate, 2-hydroxyethyl



methacrylate, 2-hydroxypropyl methacrylate, dimethylaminoethyl methacrylate, glycidyl methacrylate, and stearyl methacrylate.

Besides the above monomers, other monomers may be used in a small amount so long as the objects of the present invention can be achieved, which include, for example, acrylonitrile, 2-vinylpyridine, 4-vinylpyridine, vinylcarbazole, vinyl methyl ether, butadiene, isoprene, maleic anhydride, maleic acid, maleic acid monoesters, maleic acid diesters, and vinyl acetate.

A cross-linking agent may be used in the toner of the present invention, and a bifunctional cross-linking agent can be used, which includes, divinylbenzene, bis(4-acryloxy-polyethoxyphenyl) propane, ethylene glycol diacrylate, 1,3-butylene glycol diacrylate, 1,4-butanediol diacrylate, 1,5-pentanediol diacrylate, 1,6-hexanediol diacrylate, neopentyl glycol diacrylate, diethylene glycol diacrylate, triethylene glycol diacrylate, tetraethylene glycol diacrylate, diacrylates of polyethylene glycol #200, #400 and #600, respectively, dipropylene glycol diacrylate, polypropylene glycol diacrylate, polyester type diacrylate (MANDA, available from Nippon Kayaku Co., Ltd.), and those in which the acrylate units of the



- 41 -

above acrylate type cross-linking agents have been respectively replaced with methacrylate units.

A polyfunctional cross-linking agent can also be used, which includes pentaerythritol triacrylate, trimethylolethane triacrylate, trimethylolpropane triacrylate, tetramethylolmethane tetraacrylate, oligoester acrylate and methacrylate thereof, 2,2-bis(4-methacryloxy, polyethoxyphenyl)propane, diallyl phthalate, triallyl cyanurate, triallyl isocyanurate, triallyl isocyanurate, triallyl trimellitate, and diaryl chlorendate.

These cross-linking agents may preferably be not incorporated so that the THF-insoluble matter is controlled to be less than 10 wt.%. In the case when the cross-linking agent is incorporated, it should be used in an amount of less than 1 wt.%, preferably not more than 0.5 wt.%, and more preferably not more than 0.2 wt.%.

The binder resin used in the toner of the present invention is synthesized from monomers in the presence or absence of the cross-linking agent and also with use of a polymerization initiator.

The polymerization initiator may include di-t-butyl peroxide, benzoyl peroxide, lauroyl peroxide, t-butyl peroxyaurate, 2,2'-azobisisobutyronitrile, 1,1-bis(t-butylperoxy)-3,3,5-trimethylcyclohexane,

03 JUL 1998

- 42 -

1,1-bis(t-butylperoxy)cyclohexane, 1,1-bis(t-butylperoxycarbonyl)cyclohexane, 2,2-bis(t-butylperoxy)octane, n-butyl-4,4-bis(t-butylperoxy)valylate, 2,2-bis(t-butylperoxy)butane, 1,3-bis(t-butylperoxy-isopropyl)benzene, 2,5-dimethyl-2,5-di(t-butylperoxy)hexane, 2,5-dimethyl-2,5-di(t-butylperoxy)hexyne-3, 2,5-dimethyl-2,5-di(benzoylperoxy)hexane, di-t-butylperoxyisophthalate, 2,2-bis(4,4-di-t-butylperoxycyclohexyl)propane, di-t-butylperoxy- α -methylsuccinate, di-t-butylperoxydimethylglutarate, di-t-butylperoxyhexahydroterephthalate, di-t-butylperoxyazelaate, 2,5-dimethyl-2,5-di(t-butylperoxy)hexane, diethylene glycol-bis(t-butylperoxycarbonate), di-t-butylperoxytrimethyladipate, tris(t-butylperoxy)triazine, and vinyl tris(t-butylperoxy)silane.

The above polymerization initiators may be used alone or by mixture taking account of the amount, the polymerization temperature and the half-life period.

In the toner used in the present invention, at least one kind of a release agent having a number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_n$) of not more than 1.0×10^3 , a weight average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w$) of not more than 2.5×10^3 , an $\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$ of not more than 3.0, and a melting point (mp) of from 60°C to 120°C. The release agent may preferably be used in amount of from

03 JUL 1998

- 43 -

0.1 to 20 wt.%, and preferably from 1 to 10 wt.%, based on the binder resin.

Release agents preferably used in the toner of the present invention include, for example, paraffin wax, a low-molecular weight polyethylene wax, a low-molecular weight ethylene-propylene copolymer, a low-molecular weight polypropylene wax, and a polyolefin wax graft-modified with an aromatic-vinyl-monomer such as styrene and styrene derivatives, an unsaturated fatty acid or an unsaturated fatty acid ester. Of these, the graft-modified polyolefin wax is particularly preferred from the viewpoint of the advantages that the lifetime of developers and of machines such as copying machines making use of the
15 developers can be elongated and the machines can be made maintenance-free.

The graft-modified polyolefin wax may have an Mn of not more than 1.0×10^3 , and preferably from 400 to 700, an Mw of not more than 2.5×10^3 , and
20 preferably from 700 to 1,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 3.0, and preferably not more than 2.0, and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C, and preferably from 60°C to 100°C.

Use of this release agent makes it possible to
25 carry out the heat fixing of the toner to a recording medium under fixing conditions of low temperatures

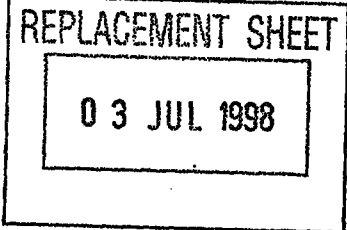
03 JUL 1998

- 44 -

without causing offset, and thus to achieve a lower power consumption.

Intensive studies made by the present inventors have revealed that what is required is a release agent which renders good release properties at a low temperature with respect to the low-temperature melting binder resin which enables the low-temperature fixing, that the temperature at which the release agent renders release properties correlates with the melting point of the release agent, and that a release agent having a lower melting point is more advantageous for the low-temperature fixing. When, however, a release agent with a low melting point is used, the release agent makes poor the blocking resistance of a toner and has an ill influence that the filming of toner to a carrier occurs when the product is used in two-component type development. Accordingly, in the present invention, the release agent is made to have the molecular weight distribution which is relatively sharp as described above, so that the blocking resistance can be improved, the release agent can render release properties at a lower temperature, and the good performance without causing the offset phenomenon can be obtained.

However, although the low-temperature fixing



can be achieved to a certain extent when the release agent with a low melting point and binder resin as described above are used in combination, it is technically difficult to disperse the release agent in the mixed resin comprised of the low-temperature softening resin and the high-temperature softening resin. An insufficient dispersion adversely affects the developing performance of toner.

Now, the present inventors made further intensive studies to have discovered that the above problems can be eliminated and a good development performance and further low-temperature fixing performance can be achieved when the low-melting polyolefin wax is graft-modified in order to improve the dispersion of the release agent in the binder resin as described above.

The binder resin in the toner of the present invention may preferably be obtained by mixing the low-temperature softening resin and the high-temperature softening resin, and both the resins may preferably be binder resins comprising the same components.

The low-melting graft-modified polyolefin release agent used in the present invention may include a polyolefin wax graft-modified with an aromatic vinyl monomer such as styrene and styrene derivatives, or an unsaturated fatty acid or an

REPLACEMENT SHEET

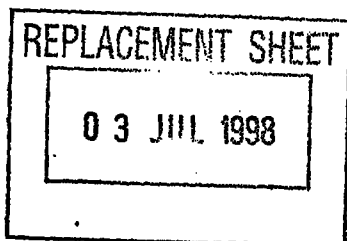
03 JUL 1998

- 46 -

unsaturated fatty acid ester.

The polyolefin wax may include polyethylene waxes; homopolymers of α -olefins such as propylene, 1-butene, 1-hexene, 1-decene, and 4-methyl-1-pentene; copolymers of two or more kinds of α -olefins; and copolymers of ethylene with an α -olefin. It may further include oxides of polyolefins.

The unsaturated fatty acid or unsaturated fatty acid ester used for synthesizing the graft-modified polyolefin may include methacrylic acid; methacrylates such as methyl methacrylate, ethyl methacrylate, propyl methacrylate, n-butyl methacrylate, isobutyl methacrylate, n-octyl methacrylate, 2-ethylhexyl methacrylate, lauryl methacrylate, stearyl methacrylate, dodecyl methacrylate, phenyl methacrylate, dimethylaminoethyl methacrylate, diethylaminoethyl methacrylate, 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl methacrylate, and glycidyl methacrylate; acrylic acid; acrylates such as methyl acrylate, ethyl acrylate, propyl acrylate, n-butyl acrylate, isobutyl acrylate, n-octyl acrylate, lauryl acrylate, stearyl acrylate, dodecyl acrylate, 2-ethylhexyl acrylate, phenyl acrylate, 2-chloroethyl acrylate, 2-hydroxyethyl acrylate, cyclohexyl acrylate, dimethylaminoethyl acrylate, diethylaminoethyl acrylate,



- 47 -

dibutylaminoethyl acrylate, 2-ethoxy acrylate, and 1,4-butanediol diacrylate; maleic acid, fumaric acid, itaconic acid, citraconic acid, and unsaturated dibasic acid esters such as monoethyl maleate, diethyl maleate, monopropyl maleate, dipropyl maleate, monobutyl maleate, dibutyl maleate, di-2-ethylhexyl maleate, monoethyl fumarate, diethyl fumarate, dibutyl fumarate, di-2-ethylhexyl fumarate, monoethyl itaconate, diethyl itaconate, monoethyl citraconate, and diethyl citraconate. These can be used alone or in combination of two or more kinds.

The aromatic vinyl monomer may include styrene, o-methylstyrene, m-methylstyrene, p-methylstyrene, α -methylstyrene, 2,4-dimethylstyrene, p-ethylstyrene, p-n-butylstyrene, p-tert-butylstyrene, p-n-dodecylstyrene, p-phenylstyrene, and p-chlorostyrene. These can be used alone or in combination of two or more kinds..

The polyolefin can be graft-modified using conventionally known methods. For example, a reaction of the polyolefin with the aromatic vinyl monomer and the unsaturated fatty acid or unsaturated fatty acid ester which are in a molten state or dissolved in a solvent may be conducted by heating in the atmosphere or under application of pressure and in the presence of a radical initiator. A graft-modified polyolefin

REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998

- 48 -

can be thus obtained. The grafting using the aromatic vinyl monomer and the unsaturated fatty acid or unsaturated fatty acid ester may be carried out using both at the same time or may be carried out using them separately.

The initiator used in the grafting reaction may include benzoyl peroxide, dichlorobenzoyl peroxide, di-tert-butyl peroxide, lauroyl peroxide, tert-butyl perphenyl acetate, cumine pivalate, azobisisobutyronitrile, dimethylazoisobutyrate, and dicumyl peroxide.

As to the proportion of the grafting agent to the polyolefin, the former may preferably be in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 100 parts by weight, and more preferably from 1 part by weight to 50 parts by weight, based on 100 parts by weight of the latter. An amount less than 0.1 part by weight can not bring about little effect of grafting, and an amount more than 100 parts by weight may result in loss of advantageous properties inherent in the polyolefin.

The aromatic vinyl monomer and the unsaturated fatty acid or unsaturated fatty acid ester may be used preferably in a weight ratio of from 95:5 to 5:95, and more preferably from 80:20 to 20:80. An excessive amount for the unsaturated fatty acid or unsaturated

REPLACEMENT SHEET

0 3 JUL 1998

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

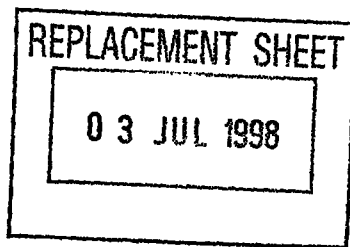


- 49 -

fatty acid ester tends to result in a decrease in the releasing effect inherent in the polyolefin. An excessive amount for the aromatic vinyl monomer can not so much bring about an improvement in the dispersibility of the polyolefin in the toner.

The graft-modified polyolefin used in the present invention may preferably be added in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 20 parts by weight, and more preferably from 0.5 part by weight to 10 parts by weight, based on 100 parts by weight of the binder resin. An amount less than 0.1 part by weight makes it difficult to bring about a sufficient releasing effect, and an amount more than 20 parts by weight tends to result in a lowering of the blocking resistance of the toner.

The graft-modified polyolefin used in the present invention may preferably have a melt viscosity in the range of from 1 to 250 cps (centipoise) at 160°C. A melt viscosity less than 1 cps tends to cause the blocking of toner. A melt viscosity more than 250 cps makes it hard for the modified polyolefin to bleed from the toner and makes it hard for the releasing effect to be exhibited. In the fixing method of the present invention, it is preferred that in general a releasable component having a lower melt viscosity is used when a lower fixing temperature is



- 50 -

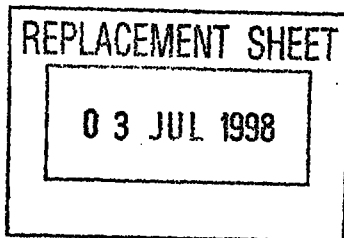
selected.

The melt viscosity referred to in the present invention is based on a value measured with a Brookfield type viscometer.

The toner used in the present invention may contain at least one kind of a release agent having a melting point of higher than 120°C so long as used in such an amount that may not adversely affect the fixing performance of the toner.

The toner of the present invention may contain a charge control agent. Conventionally known positive or negative charge control agents can be used as the charge control agent. The charge control agent may include the following:

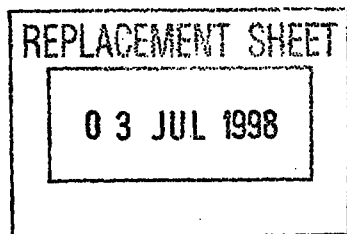
(1) Those capable of controlling the toner to have positive charge may include the following materials: Nigrosine, azine dyes containing an alkyl group having 2 to 16 carbon atoms (Japanese Patent Publication No. 42-1627), basic dyes as exemplified by C.I. Basic Yellow 2 (C.I.41000), C.I. Basic Yellow 3, C.I. Basic Red 1 (C.I.45160), C.I. Basic Red 9 (C.I.42500), C.I. Basic Violet 1 (C.I.42535), C.I. Basic Violet 3 (C.I.42555), C.I. Basic Violet 10 (C.I.45170), C.I. Basic Violet 14 (C.I.42510), C.I. Basic Blue 1 (C.I.42025), C.I. Basic Blue 3 (C.I.51005), C.I. Basic Blue 5 (C.I.42140), C.I. Basic Blue 7 (C.I.42595),



- 51 -

C.I. Basic Blue 9 (C.I.52015), C.I. Basic Blue 24 (C.I.52030), C.I. Basic Blue 25 (C.I.52025), C.I. Basic Blue 26 (C.I.44025), C.I. Basic Green 1 (C.I.42040) and C.I. Basic Green 4 (C.I.42000), lake pigments of these basic dyes (laking agents are exemplified by tungstophosphoric acid, molybdophosphoric acid, tungstomolybdophosphoric acid, tannic acid, lauric acid, gallic acid, ferricyanides, and ferrocyanides), C.I. Solvent black 3 (C.I.26150), Hanza Yellow G (C.I.11680), C.I. Mordant Black 11, C.I. Pigment Black 1, benzoylmethyl-hexadecylammonium chloride, decyl-trimethylammonium chloride, dialkyltin compounds such as dibutyltin and dioctyltin, metal salts of higher fatty acids, inorganic fine powders such as zinc oxide, metal complexes of EDTA or acetylacetone, and polyamine resins such as vinyl polymers containing an amino group and condensed polymers containing an amino group. Nigrosine, metals salts of higher fatty acids, and vinyl polymers containing an amino group are particularly preferred from the viewpoint of dispersibility.

(2) Those capable of controlling the toner to have negative charge may include the following materials: Metal compounds of monoazo dyes, as disclosed in Japanese Patent Publications No. 41-20153, No. 42-27596, No. 44-6397 and No. 45-26478, nitramines and



- 52 -

salts thereof, as disclosed in Japanese Patent Application Laid-open No. 50-133338, dyes or pigments such as C.I.14645, metal-containing compounds formed by the union of Zn, Al, Co, Cr or Fe with salicylic acid, naphthoic acid or dicarboxylic acid, as disclosed in Japanese Patent Publications No. 55-42752, No. 58-41508, No. 58-7384 and No. 59-7384, sulfonated copper phthalocyanine pigments, styrene oligomers into which a nitro group or halogen has been introduced, and chlorinated paraffins. Metal-containing compounds of monoazo dyes, and metal-containing compounds of salicylic acid, alkylsalicylic acid, naphthoic acid or dicarboxylic acid are particularly preferred from the viewpoint of dispersibility.

The toner of the present invention may also be optionally incorporated with additives to obtain good results. The additives may include lubricants such as Teflon, zinc stearate and polyvinylidene fluoride (in particular, polyvinylidene fluoride is preferred); abrasives such as cerium oxide, silicon carbide and strontium titanate (in particular, strontium titanate is preferred); fluidity-providing agents such as colloidal silica and aluminum oxide (in particular, hydrophobic colloidal silica is preferred); anti-caking agents; and conductivity-providing agents such

REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998

- 53 -

as carbon black, zinc oxide, antimony oxide and tin oxide. It is also possible to use as a developability improver, a small amount of white fine particles and black fine particles having the polarity opposite to the charge polarity of the toner.

The toner of the present invention may also be use in the form of a mixture with carrier powder, when used as a two-component type developer. In this instance, the toner and the carrier powder may be mixed in such a ratio that gives a toner concentration of from 0.1 to 50 wt.%, preferably from 0.5 to 10 wt.%, and more preferably from 3 to 5 wt.%.

As the carrier powder usable in the present invention, it is possible to use known materials. They include, for example, powders having magnetic properties, such as iron powder, ferrite powder and nickle powder, glass beads, and glass beads whose surfaces have been treated with a resin such as a fluorine resin or a silicone resin.

The toner of the present invention may further contain a magnetic material so that it can be used as a magnetic toner. In this instance the magnetic material serves as a coloring agent at the same time. The magnetic material contained in the toner may include iron oxides such as magnetite, hematite and ferrite, or compounds of divalent metals with iron

03 JUL 1998

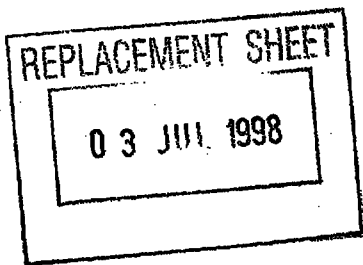
- 54 -

oxide; metals such as iron, cobalt and nickel, or alloys of any of these metals with any of metals such as aluminum, cobalt, copper, lead, magnesium, tin, zinc, antimony, beryllium, bismuth, cadmium, calcium, manganese, selenium, titanium, tungsten and vanadium, and mixture of any of these.

These ferromagnetic materials may preferably be those having an average particle diameter of from 0.1 μm to 2 μm , and more preferably from 0.1 μm to 0.5 μm . Spherical materials are particularly preferred. The magnetic material may be contained in the magnetic toner in an amount of from about 20 to 200 parts by weight based on 100 parts by weight of the resin component, and particularly preferably from 40 to 180 parts by weight based on 100 parts by weight of the resin component.

The toner of the present invention may also optionally contain a colorant.

As the colorant used in the toner of the present invention, a pigment or a dye may be used. The pigment may include carbon black, Aniline Black, acetyrene black, Naphtol Yellow, Hanza Yellow, Rhodamine Lake, Alizarin Lake, red iron oxide, Phthalocyanine Blue and Indanthrene Blue. The pigment is used in such an amount that is necessary and sufficient for maintaining the optical density of

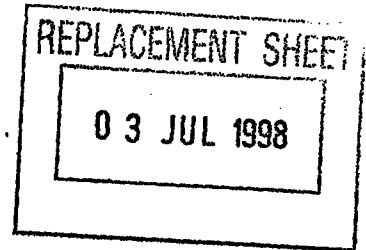


- 55 -

fixed images, and should be added preferably in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 20 parts by weight, and more preferably from 2 to 10 parts by weight, based on 100 parts by weight of the resin.

The dye may include azo dyes, anthraquinone dyes, xanthene dyes and methine dyes. The dye should be added preferably in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 20 parts by weight, and more preferably from 0.3 part by weight to 3 parts by weight, based on 100 parts by weight of the resin.

The toner according to the present invention for developing an electrostatic latent image may be prepared by a method comprising thoroughly mixing the resin composition according to the present invention, the release agent and the charge control agent optionally together with the magnetic material, the pigment or dye as a coloring agent and other additives by means of a mixing machine such as a ball mill, thereafter melting and kneading the mixture by the use of a heat kneading machine such as a heating roll, a kneader or an extruder so that resins are mutually compatibilized and the pigment or dye is dispersed and dissolved therein, and cooling the resulting product to effect solidification, followed by crushing, pulverization and then strict classification to give a toner with an average particle diameter of from 3 μ m



to 20 μm .

The present invention also relates to a method of heat-fixing a toner visible image, wherein the method comprises heat-fixing the toner image formed using the toner having the characteristic features as described above, to a recording medium by means of a heater element stationarily supported and a pressure member that stands opposite to said heater element in pressure contact and brings said recording medium into close contact with said heater element through a film interposed between them.

Fig. 1 illustrates the construction of the fixing device used in the present invention. The fixing method of the present invention is by no means limited only to the method embodied in it.

In the fixing device shown in Fig. 1, a heater element 11 has a smaller heat capacity than conventional heat rolls, and has a linear heating part. The heating part may preferably be made to have a maximum temperature of from 100°C to 300°C.

A film 15 is interposed between the heater element 11 and a pressure member 18, and may preferably comprise a heat-resistant sheet of from 1 to 100 μm in thickness. Heat-resistant sheets that can be used therefor may include sheets of polymers having high heat-resistance, such as polyester, PET

REPLACEMENT SHEET

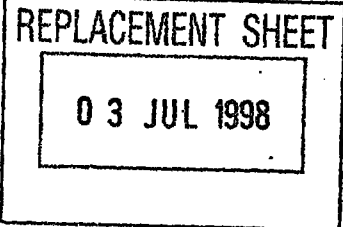
03 JUL 1998

- 57 -

(polyethylene terephthalate), PFA (a tetrafluoroethylene/perfluoroalkyl vinyl ether copolymer), PTFE (polytetrafluoroethylene), polyimide and polyamide, sheets of metals such as aluminum, and laminate sheets comprised of a metal sheet and a polymer sheet.

In a preferred constitution of the film, these heat-resistant sheets have a release layer and/or a low-resistance layer.

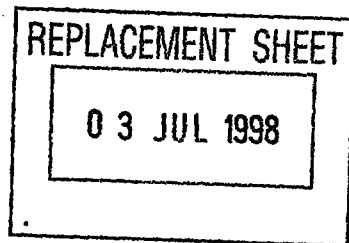
The numeral 11 denotes a low heat capacitance linear heater element stationarily supported in the fixing device. An example thereof comprises an alumina substrate 12 of 1.0 mm in thickness, 10 mm in width and 240 mm in longitudinal length and a resistance material 13 coated thereon to have a width of 1.0 mm, which is electrified from the both ends in the longitudinal direction. The electricity is applied under variations of pulse widths of the pulses corresponding with the desired temperatures and energy emission quantities which are controlled by a temperature sensor 14, in the pulse-like waveform with a period of 20 msec of DC 100V. The pulse widths range approximately from 0.5 msec to 5 msec. In contact with the heater element 11 the energy and temperature of which have been controlled in this way, a fixing film 15 moves in the direction of the arrow shown in the drawing. An example of this fixing film



includes an endless film comprised of a heat-resistant sheet of 20 μm thick (comprising, for example, polyimide, polyetherimide, PES, or PFA) and a release layer (comprising a fluorine resin such as PTFE or PFA to which a conductive material is added) coated at least on the side coming into contact with the image to have a thickness of 10 μm . In general, the total thickness of the film may preferably be less than 100 μm , and more preferably less than 40 μm . The film is moved in the direction of the arrow in a wrinkle-free state by the action of the drive of, and tension between, a drive roller 16 and a follower roller 17.

The numeral 18 denotes a pressure roller having on its surface an elastic layer of rubber with good release properties as exemplified by silicone rubber. This pressure roller is pressed against the heater element at a total pressure of 4 to 20 kg through the film interposed between them and is rotated in pressure contact with the film. Toner 20 having not been fixed on a transferring medium 19 is led to the fixing zone by means of an inlet guide 21. A fixed image is thus obtained by the heating described above.

The above has been described with reference to an embodiment in which the fixing film comprises an endless belt. A sheet-feeding shaft and a wind-up



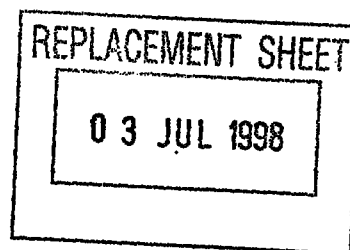
- 59 -

shaft may also be used, and the fixing film may not be endless.

The image forming apparatus includes an apparatus that forms an image by the use of a toner, as exemplified by copying machines, printers, and facsimile apparatus, to which the present fixing device can be applied.

When the temperature detected by the temperature sensor 14 in the low heat capacitance linear heater element 11 is T_1 , the surface temperature T_2 of the film 15 opposed to the resistance material 13 is about 10 to 30°C lower than T_1 . The surface temperature T_3 of the film on the part at which the film 15 is peeled from the toner-fixed face is a temperature substantially equal to the above temperature T_2 .

Suitable as methods of electrifying the heater element according to such a temperature control system are the pulse width modulation system, the frequency modulation system, the AC phase control system, etc.



The present invention will be described below in greater detail by giving synthesis examples and working examples. The "part(s)" in the synthesis examples and working examples refers to "part(s) by weight".

Synthesis Example 1

In a reaction vessel, 200 parts of cumene was put, and the temperature was raised to the reflux temperature. A mixture of 100 parts of styrene monomer and 6 parts of di-tert-butyl peroxide was dropwise added thereto at 135°C in 4 hours. Under further reflux of cumene (146°C to 156°C), the solution polymerization was completed and then the cumene was removed. The polystyrene thus obtained was soluble in THF, and had a weight average molecular weight of 7,800, a molecular weight peak (MA) of 7,200 and a T_g of 67°C. This is designated as polymer A-1 of the binder resin for the toner of the present invention.

Synthesis Examples 2 to 5

Using the monomer compositions, polymerization initiators and solvents as shown in Table 1, the solution polymerization was carried out in the same manner as in Synthesis Example 1 to give polymers A-2 to A-5 of the binder resin for the toner of the present invention.

REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998

- 61 -

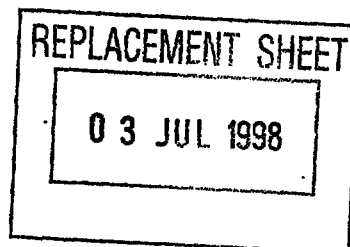
Table 1

Syntheses of Polymers A

		Monomer composition		Polymlzn.
	Polymer	(parts)	Solvent	initiator
Synthesis Example:				
2	A-2	Styrene (85) Butyl acrylate (15)	Xylene	Benzoyl peroxide
3	A-3	Styrene (80) Butyl acrylate (20)	Xylene	Benzoyl peroxide
4	A-4	Styrene (77) 2-Ethylhexyl acrylate (23)	Toluene	Benzoyl peroxide
5	A-5	Styrene (80) 2-Ethylhexyl acrylate (20)	Toluene	Benzoyl peroxide

Table 1 (Cont'd)

Polymer	Weight average molecular weight	Molecular weight peak	Tg
A-2	11,000	9,200	62°C
A-3	17,000	15,600	62°C
A-4	21,000	19,200	57°C
A-5	24,000	22,300	64°C



Synthesis Example 6

In a reaction vessel, 200 parts of deaerated water in which 0.1 part of a partially saponified product of polyvinyl alcohol was dissolved was put, and then the monomer composition as shown in Table 2 was added thereto to make up a suspension. The suspension was heated to 80°C in a nitrogen atmosphere. The suspension was maintained at that temperature for 24 hours, and then polymerization was completed. After the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, spherical polymer particles produced as a result of the polymerization were filtered, and then thoroughly washed with water, followed by dehydration and drying to give polymer B-1 of the binder resin for the toner of the present invention. The polymer had a weight average molecular weight of 452,000, a molecular weight peak of 433,000 and a Tg of 57°C.

Table 2

<u>Monomer Composition</u>	<u>Mixing proportion</u>
Styrene	72 parts
Methyl methacrylate	10 parts
Butyl acrylate	18 parts
Benzoyl peroxide	0.22 part

03 JUL 1998

Synthesis Examples 7 to 10

Using the monomer compositions and polymerization initiators as shown in Table 3, the suspension polymerization was carried out in the same manner as in Synthesis Example 6 to give polymers B-2 to B-5 of the binder resin for the toner of the present invention.

Table 3

Syntheses of Polymers B

		Monomer composition	Polymerization
Polymer		(parts)	initiator
Synthesis Example:			
7	B-2	Styrene (83) Butyl acrylate (17)	Benzoyl peroxide
8	B-3	Styrene (85) Butyl acrylate (15)	Benzoyl peroxide
9	B-4	Styrene (77) 2-Ethylhexyl acrylate (23)	1,1'-azobis (cyclohexane-1- carbonitrile)
10	B-5	Styrene (80) Butyl acrylate (20) Divinylbenzene (0.02)	Benzoyl peroxide

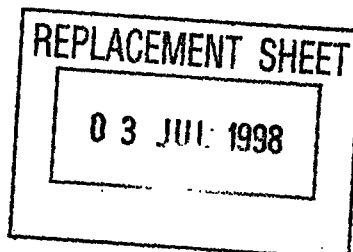


Table 3 (Cont'd)

Polymer	Weight average molecular weight	Molecular weight peak	Tg
B-2	603,000	583,000	64°C
B-3	827,000	804,000	67°C
B-4	956,000	928,000	66°C
B-5	751,000	692,000	60°C

The weight average molecular weight (Mw), Mw/Mn, flow-out point, softening point and Tg of each of the above polymers A-1, A-2, A-3, A-4, A-5, B-1, B-2, B-3, B-4 and B-5 are shown in Table 4 below.

REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998

- 65 -

Table 4

Polymer	Mw	Mw/Mn	Flow-out point (°C)	Softening point (°C)	Tg (°C)
A-1	7,800	2.4	85	105	67
A-2	11,000	2.4	85	102	62
A-3	17,000	2.2	87	105	62
A-4	21,000	2.3	87	106	57
A-5	24,000	2.2	90	110	64
B-1	452,000	2.6	116	161	57
B-2	503,000	2.5	122	173	64
B-3	827,000	2.3	130	184	67
B-4	956,000	2.1	132	182	66
B-5	751,000	2.6	127	180	60

Comparative Synthesis Example 1

A comparative polymer A-6 was prepared in the same manner as in Example 1 except that the monomer composition as shown in Table 5 was used. This binder resin had a weight average molecular weight of 4,300, a molecular weight peak of 4,200 and a Tg of 54°C.

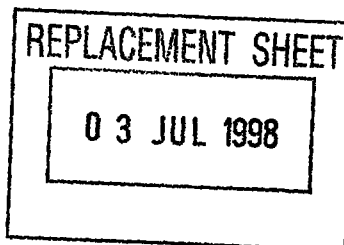


Table 5

Monomer Composition	Mixing proportion
Styrene	92 parts
5 Butyl acrylate	8 parts
Di-tert-butyl peroxide	9 parts

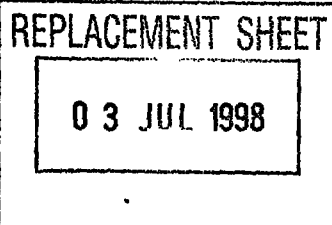
Comparative Synthesis Example 2

A comparative polymer B-6 was prepared in the same manner as in Synthesis Example 6 except that the monomer composition as shown in Table 6 was used. This binder resin had a weight average molecular weight of 217,000, a molecular weight peak of 198,000 and a Tg of 59°C.

Table 6

Monomer Composition	Mixing proportion
Styrene	82 parts
Butyl acrylate	18 parts
Divinylbenzene	0.2 part
Benzoyl peroxide	0.5 part

Preparation examples of the binder resin according to the present invention will be described



- 67 -

below.

Preparation Example 1

To 200 parts of xylene, 68 parts of polymer A-1 and 32 parts of polymer B-4 were added with stirring. Next, the mixture was heated to about 60°C to completely dissolve the polymers A-1 and B-4 added.

After the stirring was continued for about 2 hours, the xylene was removed. The resulting product is designated as binder resin 1 for the toner of the
10 present invention.

Preparation Examples 2 to 10 and Comparative

Binder Resin Preparation Examples 1 to 3

Binder resins 2 to 10 for the toner of the present invention and comparative binder resins 1 to 3
15 were obtained in the same manner as in Preparation Example 1 except that the polymers as shown in Table 7 were used.

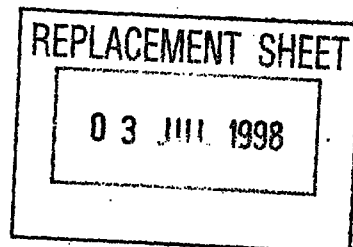


Table 7

Preparation of Binder Resins and Comparative Binder Resins

Preparation example	Polymer A	Polymer B
Binder resin 2	A-2 66 parts	B-5 34 parts
" 3	A-3 72 parts	B-4 28 parts
" 4	A-4 55 parts	B-3 45 parts
" 5	A-5 68 parts	B-4 32 parts
" 6	A-4 60 parts	B-4 40 parts
" 7	A-2 65 parts	B-3 35 parts
" 8	A-3 70 parts	B-3 30 part
" 9	A-4 60 parts	B-2 40 parts
" 10	A-5 65 parts	B-3 35 parts
Comp. binder resin 1	A-2 100 parts	0 part
" " 2	Comp. 30 parts	Comp. 70 parts
" " " 3	A-6	B-6
" " " 3	0 part	B-2 100parts

Note: Comp. = Comparative

Composition and physical properties of release agents used in Examples and Comparative Examples described below are shown in Table 8.

REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998

- 69 -

Table 8

Release agent	Wax	Graft component (weight ratio)	Graft component/ wax wt. ratio	Mw	Mn	Mw/Mn	Melting point
Graft-modified wax A	PE	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl fumarate(1)	1/100	1,900	880	2.2	95
Graft-modified wax B	PE	Styrene	25/100	820	530	1.5	91
Graft-modified wax C	PE	Dibutyl fumarate	30/100	810	550	1.5	101
Graft-modified wax D	PB-1	Styrene(3)/ dibutyl maleate(1)	5/100	750	500	1.5	81
Graft-modified wax E	PE*	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl maleate(1)	40/100	980	530	1.8	108
Graft-modified wax F	PE*	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl maleate(1)	15/100	1,650	750	2.2	115
Graft-modified wax G	PW	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl maleate(1)	18/100	800	500	1.6	82
Graft-modified wax H	PE	Styrene(1)/ diethyl maleate(1)	10/100	1,200	500	2.4	112
Graft-modified wax I	PP	Styrene(1.5)/ dibutyl maleate(1)	8/100	2,000	850	2.4	117
Graft-modified wax J	PE	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl acrylate(2)	10/100	800	530	1.5	93
Wax 1	PP	-	-	4,900	1,300	3.8	135
Wax 2	PE	-	-	1,150	560	2.1	109
Wax 3	PE	-	-	5,200	1,370	3.8	128
Wax 4	PE	Styrene(1)/ dibutyl acrylate(1)	10/100	1,500	450	3.3	78

PE: Polyethylene, PB: Polybutene, PW: Paraffin wax, PP: Polypropylene

* trade name: Sazol Wax H2

03 JUL 1998

- 70 -

Example 1

Binder resin 1	100 parts
Magnetic material	60 parts
Negative charge control agent	2 parts
Graft-modified polyethylene wax A	3 parts

The above materials were premixed using a Henschel mixer, and then kneaded for 20 minutes using a twin-roll mill heated to 150°C. The kneaded product was left to cool, and then crushed with a cutter mill. Thereafter the crushed product was finely pulverized by means of a fine grinding mill making use of a jet stream, followed by classification using an air classifier to give a black fine powder (a magnetic toner) with a volume average particle diameter of 11.2 μm .

Based on 100 parts of the magnetic toner, 0.4 part of fine colloidal silica powder was dry-blended to give a toner having colloidal silica on the surfaces of toner particles. This is designated as toner 1 of the present invention.

Grindability of toners can be represented by the throughput of the toner that can be pulverized per unit hour. In the case of the toner 1, it was 16 kg/hr at an air pressure of 5.6 kg/cm², and found very good. No melt-adhesion or the like occurred in the grinding mill.

03 JUL 1998

- 71 -

Blocking resistance was examined on the basis of the degree of agglomeration observed when about 10 g of toner was put in a polyethylene glass of 100 cc and left to stand at 50°C for a day. The degree of agglomeration was measured with Powder Tester manufactured by Hosokawa Micron Corporation. A product left at room temperature and the product left at 50°C for a day showed 9 wt.% and 12 wt.%, respectively, which were substantially the same values, and the difference (ΔG) was only 3 %. From these facts it was confirmed that substantially no blocking occurred.

Fixing performance, anti-offset, wind-around resistance, and image properties or durability were examined using a modified machine of a copier NP-6650, manufactured by Canon Inc..

The preset temperature of its fixing device was dropped by 5°C, at which the tests were carried out.

In particular, as to the anti-offset, the cleaning mechanism for the fixing roller was detached from the copying machine and the evaluation was made by counting, as copy durability, the number of copy sheets at which an image was stained or the fixing roller was contaminated.

As to the fixing performance, fixed images

03 JUL 1998

- 72 -

were rubbed 10 times with lens cleaning paper "Dusper" (trademark; OZU Paper Co., Ltd.) under application of a load of about 100 g, and any peeling of the fixed images was indicated by the rate (%) of decrease in reflection density. The fixed image for evaluation was the 200th sheet when copies were continuously taken on 200 sheets.

As to the wind-around resistance, entirely solid black images were produced on three sheets, and the state of traces left on images when the sheets are peeled with peel claws of the fixing roller was examined to judge the degree to which the peeling relied on the claws.

As a result, in respect of the fixing performance, the rate of decrease was 3 % and it was found very good. The anti-offset was so good that no stain or contamination was seen on images or the roller even when copies were taken on 50,000 sheets. The wind-around resistance was also found very good although traces made by the claws were slightly left on the images.

Running tests were carried out on about 10,000 sheets, using an image with an image-area percentage of about 5 %. As a result, images were reproduced in a good state. Although the melt-adhesion and filming to the photosensitive member were slightly seen, the

REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998

- 73 -

copied images were not affected at all.

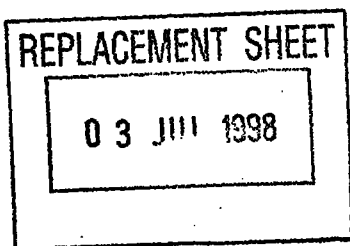
The toner had a THF-insoluble matter of 4 wt.%, an Mw/Mn according to GPC of the THF-soluble matter, of 38.2, a molecular weight peak MA of 7,700, a molecular weight peak MB of 765,000, an MB/MA of 99, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sc of 1:0.36:0.60.

Example 2

Binder resin 2	100 parts
Magnetic material	80 parts
Positive charge control agent	2 parts
Graft-modified wax B	4 parts

The above materials were premixed using a Henschel mixer, and then kneaded for 20 minutes using a twin-roll mill heated to 150°C. The kneaded product was left to cool, and then crushed with a cutter mill. Thereafter the crushed product was finely pulverized by means of a fine grinding mill making use of a jet current, followed by classification using an air classifier to give a black fine powder (a magnetic toner) with a volume average particle diameter of 8.7 μm .

Based on 100 parts of the magnetic toner, 0.4 part of fine colloidal silica powder was dry-blended to give a toner having colloidal silica on the surfaces of toner particles. This is designated as



- 74 -

toner 2 of the present invention.

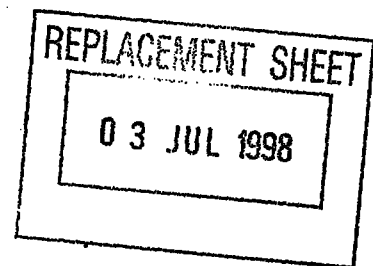
Grindability of the toner was 5.8 kg/hr at an air pressure of 5.6 kg/cm², and found very good. No melt-adhesion or the like occurred in the grinding mill.

Blocking resistance was examined on the basis of the degree of agglomeration observed when about 10 g of toner was put in a polyethylene glass of 100 cc and left to stand at 50°C for a day. A product left at room temperature and the product left at 50°C for a day showed 17 wt.% and 21 wt.%, respectively, which were substantially the same values, and the difference (ΔG) was only 4 %. From these facts it was confirmed that substantially no blocking occurred.

Fixing performance, anti-offset, wind-around resistance, and image properties or durability were examined using a modified machine of a copier NP-4835, manufactured by Canon Inc.

The preset temperature of its fixing device was dropped by 10°C, at which the tests were carried out.

In particular, as to the anti-offset, the cleaning mechanism for the fixing roller was detached from the copying machine and the evaluation was made by counting, as copy durability, the number of copy sheets at which an image was stained or the fixing



- 75 -

roller was contaminated.

The fixing performance and the wind-around resistance were also evaluated in the same manner as in Example 1.

As a result, in respect of the fixing performance, the rate of decrease was 6 % and it was found very good. The anti-offset was so good that no stain or contamination was seen on images or the roller even when copies were taken on 1,000 sheets. The wind-around resistance was also found very good although traces made by the claws were slightly left on the images.

Running tests were carried out on about 30,000 sheets, using an image with an image-area percentage of about 5 %. As a result, images were reproduced in a good state. No melt-adhesion nor filming to the photosensitive member was seen.

The toner 2 had a THF-insoluble matter of 2 wt.%, an Mw/Mn according to GPC of the THF-soluble matter, of 24.7, a molecular weight peak MA of 14,000, a molecular weight peak MB of 680,000, an MB/MA of 48.6, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1:0.40:0.59.

Example 3

Using the toner 2 prepared in Example 2, unfixed images were obtained by means of a modified

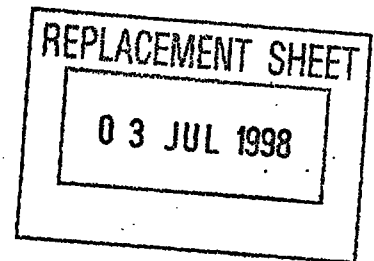
REPLACEMENT SHEET
03 JUL 1998

- 76 -

machine of a copier FC-5, manufactured by Canon Inc.

A test for fixing the unfixed images was carried out using the external fixing device as shown in Fig. 1, comprising a pressure member that stands opposite to a heater element in pressure contact and brings a recording medium into close contact with the heater element through a film interposed between them. Used as a material of the fixing film 15 was an endless film comprising a polyimide film coated with a release layer with a thickness of 10 μm to which a fluorine resin and a conductive material were added. A silicone rubber was used as the pressure roller 18, and the fixing was carried out with a nip of 3.5 mm, under a total pressure of 8 kg between the heater element 11 and the pressure roller 18, and at a process speed of 50 mm/sec. The film was moved in the direction of the arrow in a wrinkle-free state by the action of the drive of and tension between, the drive roller 16 and the follower roller 17.

The heater element 11 was comprised of a low heat capacitance linear heater element, to which energy was pulsewise applied and temperature control was carried out. The resistance material of the heater element 11 had a power consumption of 150 W. Temperatures were so controlled as to be the same as, or lower by 15°C than the fixing assembly (preset



fixing temperature: 180°C) of the FC-5 modified machine, at which the tests were carried out. As a result, the fixing performance was 2 % in terms of the rate of decrease without stain and contamination on both the image and the fixing film even after 3,000 sheet running, and found good. In addition, the waiting time was 3 seconds or less, and the power consumption was significantly lower than that in a heat-roller fixing system.

Example 4

Binder resin 8	100 parts
Carbon black	4 parts
Positive charge control agent	2 parts
Graft-modified wax A	5 parts

Using the above materials, a toner was prepared in the same manner as in Example 2. This toner and colloidal silica were mixed in amounts of 100 parts and 0.4 part, respectively. The resulting toner is designated as toner 3 of the present invention. In iron powder with a particle size of 200 mesh-pass and 300 mesh-on, the toner 3 was mixed in an amount of about 10 wt.% to give a developer. Only the toner was replenished.

The grindability of this toner was 15.2 kg/hr in terms of the throughput under an air pressure of 5.6 kg/cm², and was found very good. There also

REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998

- 78 -

occurred no melt-adhesion to the interior of the grinding mill. The blocking resistance was evaluated as $\Delta G = 5$, and was found not problematic at all.

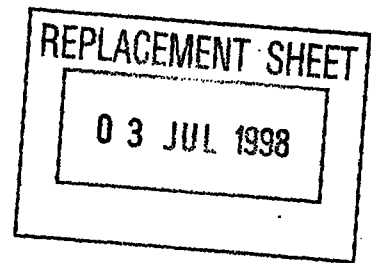
Image properties and fixing performance were evaluated using a modified machine of a copier FC-3, manufactured by Canon Inc. As a result, images were reproduced in a good state, and stable images were obtained even after 1,000 sheet running. In addition, no melt-adhesion nor filming to the photosensitive drum was seen.

The preset temperature of the fixing assembly was dropped by 20°C and also the cleaning mechanism was detached from the fixing assembly, under the state of which the above running was carried out. As a result, the fixing performance was about 5 % in terms of the rate of decrease, and was found good. The anti-offset and the wind-around resistance were also found good.

The present toner had a THF-insoluble matter of 1.8 wt.%, an Mw/Mn according to GPC of the THF-soluble matter, of 29, a molecular weight peak MA of 18,000, a molecular weight peak MB of 770,000, an MB/MA of 43, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1:0.43:0.38.

Examples 5 to 8

Toners 4 to 7 of the present invention were



obtained in the same manner as in Example 1 except that the binder resin was replaced with the binder resins as shown in Fig. 9.

Examples 9 to 11

Toners 8 to 10 of the present invention were obtained in the same manner as in Example 2 except that the binder resin and release agent were replaced with those as shown in Fig. 9.

Results of the evaluation made on the toners of Examples 5 to 11 are shown in Table 10.

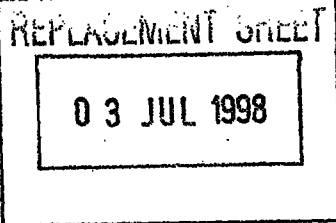
Comparative Example 1

Comparative toner 1 was obtained in the same manner as in Example 2 except that comparative binder resin 1 was used which contained 100 parts of polymer A-2 only as the binder resin.

In the case of this comparative toner, fine toner particles were formed in a large quantity when it was pulverized under an air pressure of 5.6 kg/cm^2 , resulting in a broad particle size distribution. Thus the productivity was clearly inferior.

Using the FC-5 modified machine, the fixing performance, anti-offset, wind-around resistance, and image properties or durability were examined in the same manner as in Example 2.

As a result, in respect of the anti-offset, stain and contamination were respectively occurred on



both the images and the roller when copies were taken on 20 sheets. In respect of the wind-around resistance, traces made by the peel claws were clearly left on the images. In some instances, no paper was discharged from the fixing assembly.

The present toner had a THF-insoluble matter of 0 wt.%, an Mw/Mn according to GPC of the THF-soluble matter, of 2.1, and a molecular weight peak MA of 8,900.

Comparative Example 2 and 3

Comparative toners 2 and 3 were obtained in the same manner as in Example 2 except that the binder resins and release agents were changed to those shown in Table 9. Results of the evaluation made thereon are shown in Table 10..

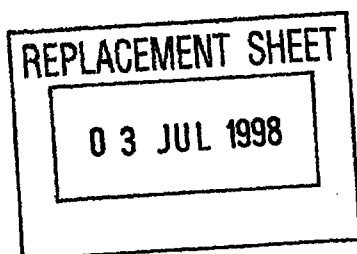
03 JUL 1998

- 81 -

Table 9

THF-in-												
Binder resin		soluble matter		Mw/Mn	MA	MB	MB/MA	SA:SB:Sd	Release agent			
Example:												
5	4	1.3	31	10,000	310,000	31	1:0.43:0.59	Graft-modified wax C				
6	10	1.5	20	13,000	667,000	51	1:0.37:0.56	Graft-modified wax D				
7	9	2.0	25	18,000	568,000	32	1:0.41:0.39	Graft-modified wax E				
8	6	0.5	29	18,000	770,000	43	1:0.43:0.48	Graft-modified wax F				
9	7	1.0	46	8,600	667,000	78	1:0.38:0.55	Graft-modified wax G				
10	3	1.5	26	15,000	770,000	51	1:0.30:0.60	Graft-modified wax H				
11	5	1.0	22	21,000	760,000	36	1:0.35:0.60	Graft-modified wax I				
Comparative Example:												
2	Cp-2	12	16	4,100	180,000	44	1:0.83:0.47	Wax 1				
3	Cp-3	1.0	2.4	-	570,000	-	-	Wax 2				

Cp: Comparative binder resin



- 82 -

Table 10
Results of Evaluation on Toners of the Invention
and Comparative Toner

	Grind- ability	Block- ing resist- ance (ΔG)	Fixing perform- ance	Anti- offset	Melt- adhesion and filming to photosensi- tive member
Example:					
5	Good	4 %	1 %	Good	Same as Ex.1
6	Good	4 %	4 %	Good	Same as Ex.1
7	Good	5 %	3 %	Good	Same as Ex.1
8	Good	3 %	5 %	Good	Same as Ex.1
9	Good	3 %	3 %	Good	Not at all
10	Good	4 %	4 %	Good	Not occurred
11	Good	4 %	2 %	Good	Not occurred
Comparative Example:					
2	Poor	4 %	15 %	Poor	Occurred
3	Inferior	4 %	50 %	Poor	Not occurred

Preparation of resin 11

In a reaction vessel, 200 parts of xylene was put, and the temperature was raised to the reflux temperature. A mixture of 90 parts of styrene monomer, 10 parts of butyl acrylate monomer and 7

03 JUL 1998

- 83 -

parts of di-tert-butyl peroxide was mixed therein, and the solution polymerization was completed in 6 hours under reflux of xylene.

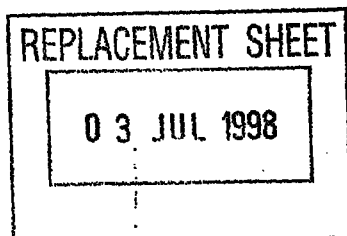
The styrene-butyl acrylate copolymer (hereinafter "St-BA copolymer") thus obtained had the physical properties as shown in the column of "Low-temperature softening resin" on "Resin 11" in Table 11.

On the other hand, 82 parts of styrene monomer, 18 parts of butyl acrylate monomer, 0.3 part of polyvinyl alcohol, 200 parts of deaerated water and 0.11 part of benzoyl peroxide were mixed and suspendedly dispersed. The resulting suspension was heated and maintained at 78°C for 24 hours in a nitrogen atmosphere, and then the polymerization was completed to give a high-temperature softening resin as shown on "Resin 11" in Table 11.

A dried product of this high-temperature softening resin was introduced in the resin solution formed when the solution polymerization for the above low-temperature softening resin was completed, and made to completely dissolve in a solvent. Thereafter the solvent was removed. Resin 11 was thus prepared.

Preparation of resins 12 to 15 and comparative resins 4 to 6

Resins 12 to 15 and comparative resins 4 to 6,



- 84 -

as shown in Table 11, were respectively synthesized and prepared according to the procedure for resin 11.

Example 12

After 100 parts of the resin 11, 70 parts of a magnetic material, 2 parts of a positive charge control agent and 4 parts of graft-modified polyethylene wax J ($M_n: 5.3 \times 10^2$; $M_w: 8.0 \times 10^2$; $M_w/M_n: 1.5$; melting point: 93°C) in which styrene and butyl acrylates were used as graft components, the mixture was melt-kneaded using a twin-screw extruder. The kneaded product was cooled and then pulverized by means of a jet-stream grinding mill, followed by classification using an air classifier to give a black fine powder (a magnetic toner) with a volume average particle diameter of about $8.5 \mu\text{m}$. Based on 100 parts of the resulting magnetic toner, 0.6 part of hydrophobic colloidal silica powder was added and blended to give toner A, having hydrophobic colloidal silica on the surfaces of toner particles.

Unfixed images of this toner A were obtained using a modified machine, a copier NP-1215 (manufactured by Canon Inc.) from which the fixing assembly was detached. Commercially available copy paper, Canon New Dry Paper (54 g/m^2 ; Canon Sales Inc.) was used as a recording medium.

A tests for fixing the unfixed images was

03 JUL 1998

- 85 -

carried out using a temperature-variable heat roller external fixing assembly comprising an upper roller comprised of Teflon and a lower roller comprised of silicone rubber, under conditions of a nip of 4 mm, a pressure between the upper and lower rollers, of 0.4 kg/cm in linear pressure and a process speed of 45 mm/sec, and with temperature control at intervals of 5°C within the temperature range of from 100°C to 230°C. The fixed images thus obtained were rubbed with lens cleaning paper "Dusper" (trademark; OZU Paper Co., Ltd.) under application of a load of 50 g/cm², and the temperature at which the rate of decrease in image density before and after the rubbing was not more than 7 % was regarded as a fixing starting temperature. As to anti-offset tests, the fixed images and the rollers were observed to make evaluation.

As a result, the fixing starting temperature was as low as 120°C and a non-offset region was seen at 110 to 215°C, showing that the low-temperature fixing had been achieved. The toner also showed a good blocking resistance. The blocking resistance was evaluated on samples obtained after toners were left in a 50°C dry container for 3 days.

Results of the evaluation are shown in Table

REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998

- 86 -

Examples 13 to 16

Toners B to E were prepared using resins 12 to 15, respectively, shown in Table 11 in the same manner as in Example 12. Evaluation was made on their fixing performance.

The resulting toners are noted as Examples 13 to 16, respectively, and the results of the evaluation are shown in Table 13.

Comparative Examples 4 to 6

Toners F to H were prepared using comparative resins 4 to 6, respectively, shown in Table 11 in the same manner as in Example 12. Evaluation was made on their fixing performance.

The resulting toners are noted as Comparative Examples 4 to 6, respectively, and the results of the evaluation are shown in Table 13.

Comparative Example 7

Toner I was prepared in the same manner as in Example 13 except that 3 parts of wax 3 (polyethylene wax) melting at 128°C was used as the release agent. Evaluation was made on its fixing performance. Results obtained are shown in Table 13.

Comparative Example 8

Toner J was prepared in the same manner as in Example 12 except that 3 parts of wax 4 (graft-modified polyethylene wax) obtained by subjecting

REPLACEMENT SHEET

0.3 JUL 1998

polyethylene wax (Mn: 4.5×10^2 ; Mw: 1.5×10^3 ; Mw/Mn: 3.3) to the same graft modification as in Example 1 was used as the release agent. Evaluation was made on its fixing performance. Results obtained are shown in Table 13.

As will be evident from Table 13, the toners of Examples 12 to 16 have achieved good low-temperature fixing performance, anti-offset, blocking resistance and developing performance. However, with regard to the toner of Comparative Example 4, though achievable of low-temperature fixing performance, it shows a poor anti-offset. With regard to the toner of Comparative Example 5, it shows a poor low-temperature fixing performance.

In respect of the toner of Comparative Example 6, no low-temperature fixing performance is achieved. In respect of the toner of Comparative Example 7, there are problems in the low-temperature fixing performance and developing performance.

In respect of the toner of Comparative Example 8, it has achieved the low-temperature fixing performance but shows a poor blocking resistance.

From the foregoing, it has been made clear that the toners for developing electrostatic images according to the present invention have superior low-temperature fixing performance and anti-offset, and

03 JUL 1998

- 88 -

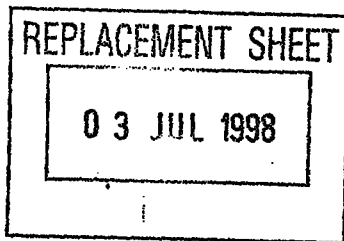
have the composition that does not adversely affect the blocking resistance and developing performance.

Example 17

Unfixed images were obtained using as a toner the toner A as used in Example 12.

A test for fixing the unfixed images was carried out using the external fixing device as shown in Fig. 1, provided with a pressure member that stands opposite to a heater element in pressure contact and brings a recording medium into close contact with the heater element through a film interposed between them. Used as a material of the fixing film 15 was an endless film comprising a polyimide film coated with a release layer with a thickness of 10 μm to which a fluorine resin and a conductive material were added. A silicone rubber was used as the pressure roller 18, and the fixing was carried out with a nip of 3.5 mm and at a process speed of 45 mm/sec. The film was moved in the direction of the arrow in a wrinkle-free state by the action of the drive of, and tension between, the drive roller 16 and the follower roller 17.

The heater element 11 was comprised of a low heat capacitance linear heater element, to which energy was pulsewise applied and temperature control was carried out. Temperatures were controlled in the



- 89 -

same manner as in Example 12, i.e., at intervals of 5°C within the range of from 100 to 230°C.

As a result, the fixing starting temperature was as low as 120°C and a non-offset region was seen at 105 to 215°C, showing that the low-temperature fixing had been achieved. The toner also showed a good wipd-around resistance.

Table 12 shows physical properties of the binder resins 11 to 15 and comparative binder resins 4 to 6.

03 JUL 1998

1 90 1

Table 11

Low-temperature softening resin						High-temperature softening resin					
Com- posi- tion/ amount (wt.%)	Mw	Mw/Mn	(1)	(2)	Tg °C	Com- posi- tion/ amount (wt.%)	Mw	Mw/Mn	(1)	(2)	Tg °C
Resin:											
11 St-BA (75)	1.1x10 ⁴	2.4	85	103	58	St-BA (25)	9.5x10 ⁵	2.5	131	184	69.5
12 St-BA (70)	6.5x10 ³	2.2	84	101	57	St-BA (30)	9.5x10 ⁵	2.5	131	184	69.5
13 St-BA (70)	1.5x10 ⁴	2.5	86	104	58	St-BA (30)	6.4x10 ⁵	2.4	122	172	65.5
14 St-2EHA (75)	1.1x10 ⁴	2.5	86	104	59	St-2EHA (25)	7.3x10 ⁵	2.3	127	180	67.0
15 St-BA (80)	6.5x10 ³	2.2	84	101	57	St-BA-DVB (20)	1.0x10 ⁶	2.5	135	193	70.5
Comp. binder resin:											
4 St-BA (70)	6.5x10 ³	2.2	84	101	57	St-BA (30)	3.6x10 ⁵	2.5	101	147	65
5 St-BA (55)	6.5x10 ³	2.2	84	101	57	St-BA (45)	3.6x10 ⁵	2.5	101	147	65
6 St-BA (90)	2.5x10 ⁴	2.3	92	115	58	St-BA (10)	9.5x10 ⁵	2.5	131	184	69.5

(1): Flow-out point, (2): Softening point

St: Styrene, DVB: Divinylbenzene

BA: Butyl acrylate

2EHA: 2-Ethylhexyl acrylate

Comp.: Comparative

03 JUL 1998

- 91 -

Table 12

Binder resin	THF-insoluble resin matter	Mw/Mn	MA	MB	MB/MA	SA:SB:Sd
11	0.9	28	8.0×10^3	6.3×10^5	78.8	1:0.35:0.48
12	1.2	30	4.5×10^3	6.3×10^5	140	1:0.40:0.55
13	1.3	24	1.1×10^4	4.8×10^5	43.6	1:0.39:0.40
14	1.0	26	8.0×10^3	5.1×10^5	63.8	1:0.34:0.45
15	2.0	38	4.5×10^3	6.7×10^5	148.9	1:0.31:0.60
Comp. binder resin: 4	0.9	27	4.5×10^3	2.9×10^5	64.4	1:0.40:0.38
5	1.1	20	4.5×10^3	2.9×10^5	64.4	1:0.71:0.36
6	0.7	25	2.1×10^4	6.3×10^5	30	1:0.22:0.37

Comp.: Comparative

03 JUL 1998

- 92 -

Table 13
Evaluation on Fixing Performance

	Fixing start- ing temp. (°C)	Non- offset temp. range (°C)	Fixing temp. range	Block- ing resist- ance (50°C, 3 days)	Devel- oping per- form- ance
Example:					
12, Toner A	120	110-215	95	A	A
13, Toner B	115	110-215	100	A	A
14, Toner C	125	110-210	85	A	A
15, Toner D	120	110-215	95	A	A
16, Toner E	110	105-210	100	A	A
Comparative Example:					
4, Toner F	115	110-155	40	A	A
5, Toner G	140	135-210	70	A	A
6, Toner H	150	140-215	65	A	A
7, Toner I	140	135-210	70	A	BC
8, Toner J	115	110-215	100	BC	A
Example:					
17 Toner A	120	105-215	95	A	A

A: Good, BC: Poor or problematic

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

- 93 -

REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998

As described above, the present invention can achieve a low cost in the operation of copying machines and yet can provide good images, because of the superior low-temperature fixing performance and developing performance of the toner.

A toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprises a binder resin and a colorant. Such binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8.

03 JUL 1998

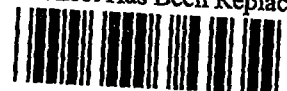
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

- 94 -

CLAIMS:

1. A toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprising a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\overline{M}_w/\overline{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that ME/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio $SA:SB:Sd$ of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex A corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998



- 95 -

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

molecular weight distribution curve by Sd.

2. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin contains the THF-insoluble matter in an amount of not more than 5 % by weight.

3. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an Mw/Mn of not less than 20.

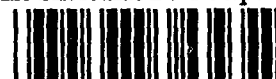
4. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an Mw/Mn of from 25 to 60.

5. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 5,000 to 15,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 450,000 to 900,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 30,000 to 300,000;

25

6. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998



- 96 -

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

has an MB/MA of from 30 to 120.

7. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an MB/MA of from 40 to 100.

8. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak other than the MA, in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000.

9. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak other than the MB, in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000.

10. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight minimum other than the Md, in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000.

11. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998



- 97 -

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.7 : 0.4 to 0.7.

12. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.6 : 0.5 to 0.7.

13. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin further comprises a release agent.

14. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent is contained in an amount of from 0.1 % by weight to 20 % by weight based on the binder resin.

15. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent is contained in an amount of from 1 % by weight to 10 % by weight based on the binder resin.

16. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent has a number average molecular weight (Mn) of not more than 1,000, a weight average molecular weight (Mw) of not more than 2,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998



- 98 -

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

3. and a melting point of from 60 to 120°C.

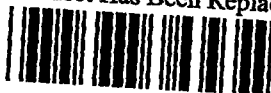
17. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said release agent has an Mn of from 400 to 700, an Mw of from 500 to 1,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 2.5, and a melting point of from 60 to 100°C, and is contained in an amount of from 1 % by weight to 10 % by weight based on the binder resin.

18. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent comprises a graft-modified wax, a low-molecular weight polyethylene wax, a low-molecular weight ethylene-propylene copolymer, a low-molecular weight polypropylene wax or a paraffin wax.

19. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent comprises a polyolefin wax graft-modified with an aromatic vinyl monomer, an unsaturated fatty acid or an unsaturated fatty acid ester.

20. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has an Mn of not more than

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

- 99 -

1,000, an Mw of not more than 2,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 30 and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C.

21. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has an Mn of from 400 to 700, an Mw of from 700 to 1,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 2.0, and a melting point of from 60 to 100°C.

22. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has a graft component in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 100 parts by weight based on 100 parts by weight of the polyolefin.

23. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has a graft component in an amount of from 1 part by weight to 50 parts by weight based on 100 parts by weight of the polyolefin.

24. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has a melt viscosity of from 1 cps to 250 cps at a temperature of 160°C.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

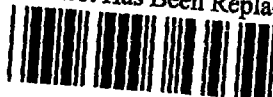
- 100 -

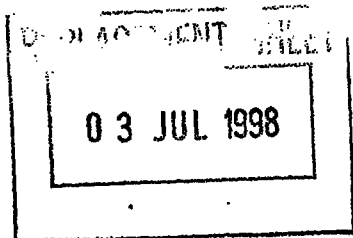
25. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein;

said binder resin contains i) two kinds of styrene-acrylate copolymers, a low-temperature softening resin and a high-temperature softening resin, and ii) a graft-modified polyolefin;

said low-temperature softening resin having a weight average molecular weight (Mw) of from 5.0×10^3 to 3.0×10^4 , a ratio of Mw to a number average molecular weight (Mn) (Mw/Mn) of not more than 3.0, a flow-out point in a flow tester, of from 75°C to 90°C, a softening point of from 80°C to 110°C, and a glass transition point (Tg) of from 55°C to 65°C and being contained in said binder resin in an amount of not less than 65 wt.%; said high-temperature softening resin having a weight average molecular weight (Mw) of from 4.0×10^5 to 1.5×10^6 , a ratio of Mw to a number average molecular weight (Mn) (Mw/Mn) of not more than 3.0, a flow-out point in a flow tester, of from 110°C to 160°C, a softening point of from 150°C to 230°C, and a glass transition point (Tg) of not less than 55°C; said low-temperature softening resin and said high-temperature softening resin being in a proportion ranging from 50:50 to 90:10 in weight proportion; and said low-temperature softening resin being obtained by solution polymerization, said high-temperature

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

- 101 -

softening resin being obtained by suspension polymerization, and the both being mixed in a solvent capable of dissolving the both; and

said graft-modified polyolefin having a number average molecular weight (M_n) of not more than 1.0×10^3 , a weight average molecular weight (M_w) of not more than 2.5×10^3 , an M_w/M_n of not more than 3.0, and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C .

26. A heat fixing method comprising;

imparting a toner image onto a recording medium, wherein a toner that forms said toner image comprises a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\overline{M_w}/\overline{M_n}$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio

25 provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150,

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998



- 102 -

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex A corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by Sd; and

heat-fixing said toner image to said recording medium by means of a heater element stationarily supported and a pressure member that stands opposite to said heat element in pressure contact and brings said recording medium into close contact with said heater element through a film interposed between them.

27. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element has a temperature of from 100°C to 300°C.

28. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said toner image is heated with a heater element having a temperature of from 100°C to 300°C, through a film having a thickness of from 1 μm to 100 μm.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

- 103 -

29. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said film has a heat resistance.

30. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein said film comprises a layer formed of a polymer selected from the group consisting of polyimide, polyester, polyethylene terephthalate, a tetrafluoroethylene-perfluoroalkyl vinyl ether copolymer, polytetrafluoroethylene and polyamide.

31. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein said film comprises a layer formed of a metal.

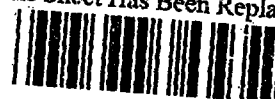
32. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein said film has at least one of a release layer and a low-resistance layer.

33. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein said film comprises a layer of a polyimide film and a fluorine resin layer.

34. A heat fixing method according to Claim 33, wherein said fluorine resin layer comprises a
25 conductive material dispersed therein

35. A heat fixing method according to Claim

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



REPLACEMENT SHEET

03 JUL 1998



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

- 104 -

34, wherein said fluorine resin layer comprises polytetrafluoroethylene.

36. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said film is brought into pressure contact with said heater element by means of said pressure member under a total pressure of from 4 kg to 20 kg.

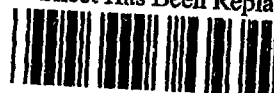
37. A heat fixing method according to Claim 36, wherein said pressure member is provided with a pressure roller having a rubber elastic layer.

38. A heat fixing method according to Claim 36, wherein said pressure member is provided with a pressure roller having an elastic layer formed of silicone rubber.

39. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element is heated by applying to a resistance material a current with a pulse-like waveform.

40. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element has a low heat capacitance and has a linear structure.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





- 105 -

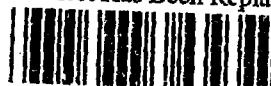
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

41. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element is provided with a resistance material and a temperature sensor, and when the heater element temperature detected by the temperature sensor is T_1 , the surface temperature T_2 of the film opposed to said resistance material is about 10°C to about 30°C lower than the temperature T_1 and the surface temperature T_3 of the film on the part at which the film is peeled from a fixed toner image is a temperature substantially equal to the temperature T_2 .

42. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said toner comprises the toner according to any one of Claims 2 to 25.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
03 JUL 1998

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



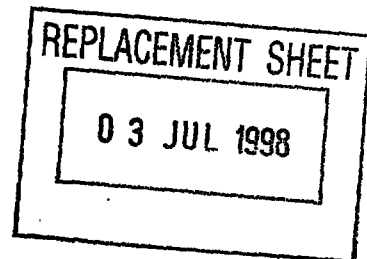
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

- 106 -

ABSTRACT OF THE DISCLOSURE

A toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprises a binder resin and a colorant. Such binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8.

Figure 1



This Sheet Has Been Replaced



03 JUL 1998

- 1 -

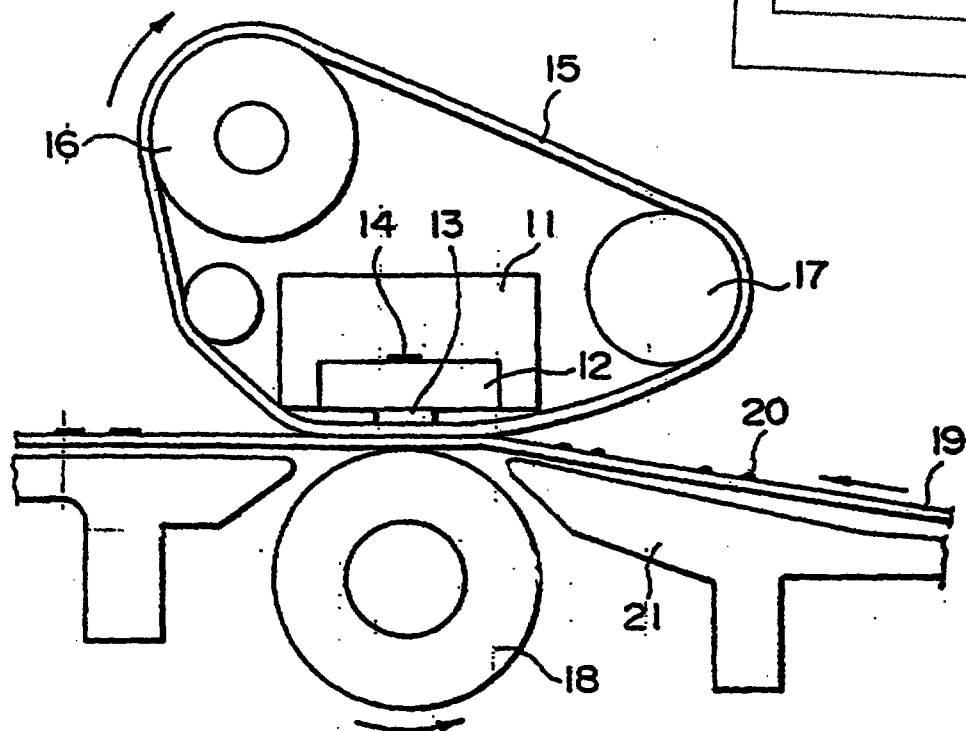


FIG. 1

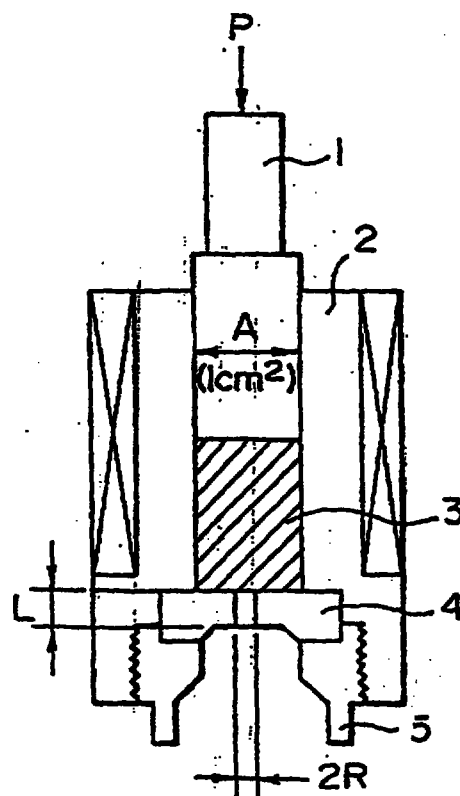


FIG. 3

03 JUL 1998

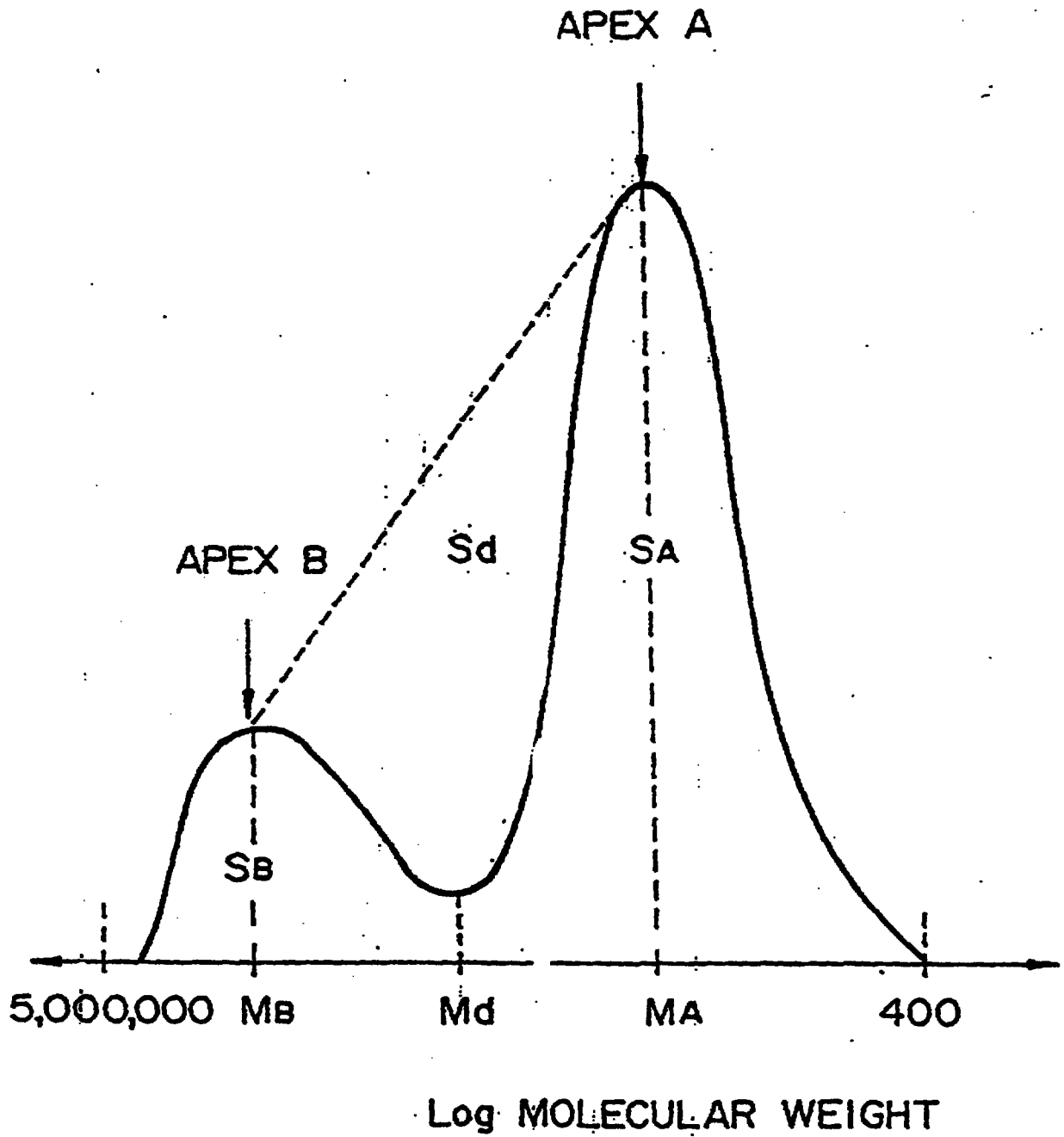


FIG. 2

REPLACEMENT SHEET
03 JUL 1998

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

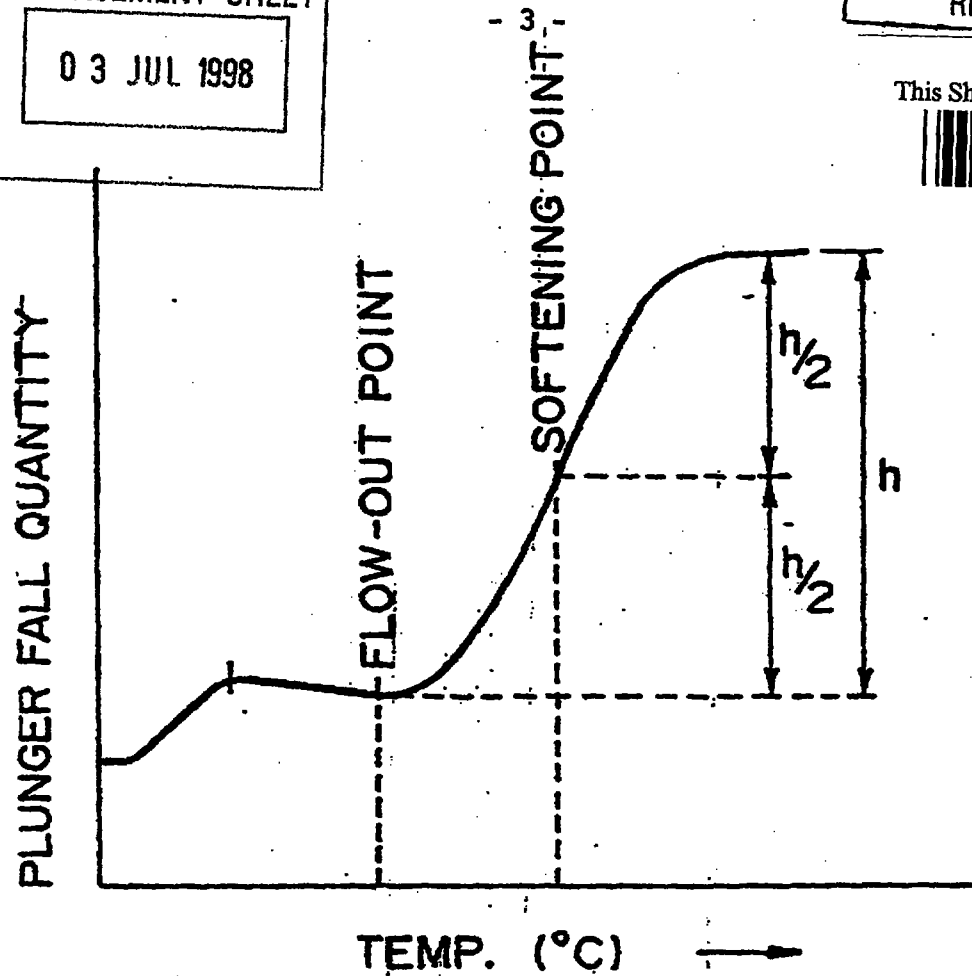
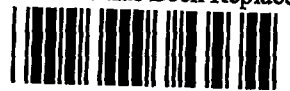
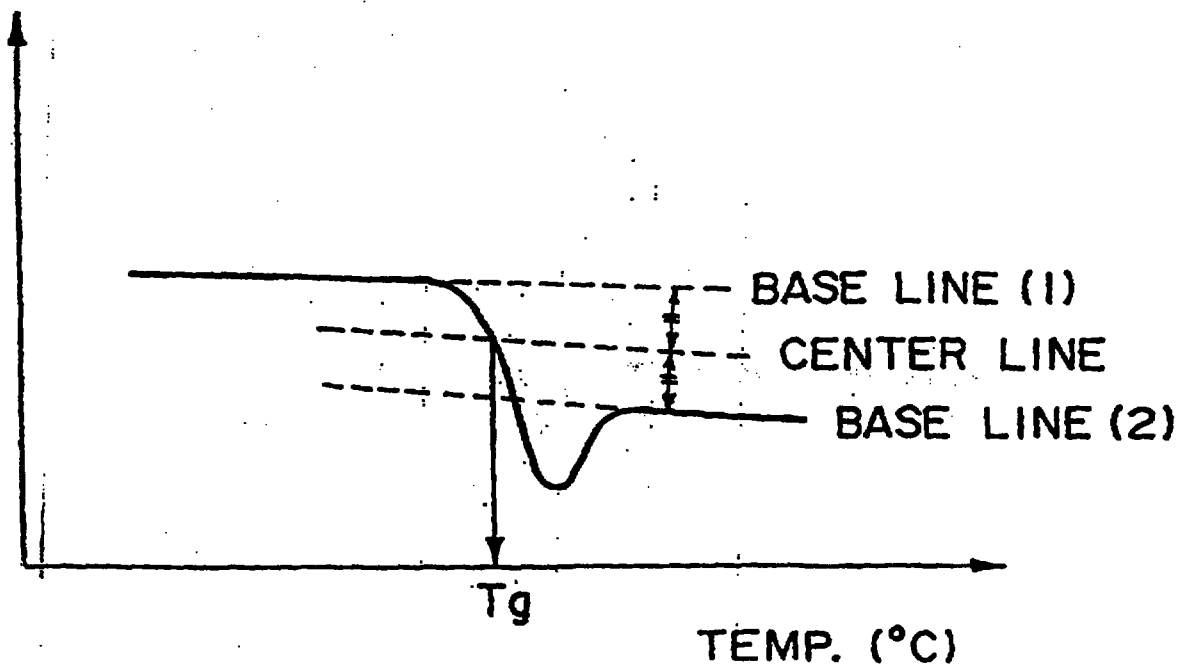


FIG. 4



REPLACEMENT SHEET

31 JUL 1998

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

94



9606857-2
JPO's

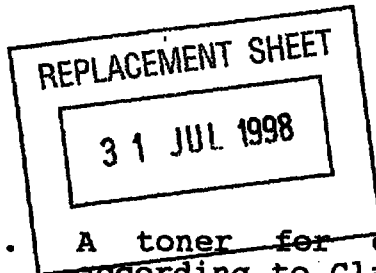
Claims:

REPLACEMENT SHEET

1. A toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprising a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt. % based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight (M_w/M_n) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex A corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by Sd.
2. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin contains the THF-insoluble matter in an amount of not more than 5 % by weight.
3. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an M_w/M_n of not less than 20.
4. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an M_w/M_n of from 25 to 60.
5. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 5,000 to 15,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 450,000 to 900,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 30,000 to 300,000.
6. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an MB/MA of from 30 to 120.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



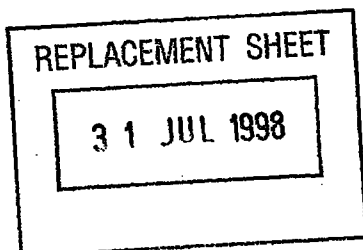


REPLACEMENT SHEET

7. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an MB/MA of from 40 to 100.
8. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak other than the MA, in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000.
9. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak other than the MB, in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000.
10. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak other than the Md, in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000.
11. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.7 : 0.4 to 0.7.
12. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.6 : 0.5 to 0.7.
13. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin further comprises a release agent.
14. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent is contained in an amount of from 0.1 % by weight to 20 % by weight based on the binder resin.
15. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent is contained in an amount of from 1 % by weight to 10 % by weight based on the binder resin.
16. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent has a number average molecular weight (Mn) of not more than 1,000, a weight average molecular weight (Mw) of not more than 2,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 3, and a melting point of from 60 to 120°C.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





96

REPLACEMENT SHEET

17. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said release agent has an Mn of from 400 to 700, an Mw of from 500 to 1,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 2.5, and a melting point of from 60 to 100°C, and is contained in an amount of from 1 % by weight to 10 % by weight based on the binder resin.
18. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent comprises a graft-modified wax, a low-molecular weight polyethylene wax, a low-molecular weight ethylene-propylene copolymer, a low-molecular weight polypropylene wax or a paraffin wax.
19. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent comprises a polyolefin wax graft-modified with an aromatic vinyl monomer, an unsaturated fatty acid or an unsaturated fatty acid ester.
20. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has an Mn of not more than 1,000, an Mw of not more than 2,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 30 and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C.
21. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has an Mn of from more than 400 to 700, an Mw of from 700 to 1,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 2.0, and a melting point of from 60 to 100°C.
22. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has a graft component in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 100 parts by weight based on 100 parts by weight of the polyolefin.
23. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has a graft component in an amount of from 1 part by weight to 50 parts by weight based on 100 parts by weight of the polyolefin.
24. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified wax has a melt viscosity of from 1 m Pas (cP) to 250 m Pas (cP) at a temperature of 160°C.
25. A toner for developing an electrostatic image

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



REPLACEMENT SHEET

31 JUL 1998

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

97



REPLACEMENT SHEET

according to Claim 1, wherein;

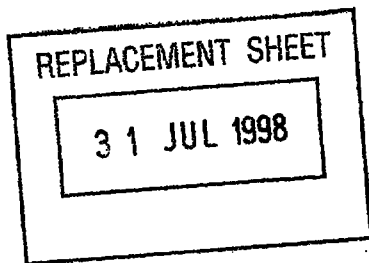
said binder resin contains i) two kinds of styrene-acrylate copolymers, a low-temperature softening resin and a high-temperature softening resin, and ii) a graft-modified polyolefin; said low-temperature softening resin having a weight average molecular weight (Mw) of from 5.0×10^3 to 3.0×10^4 , a ratio of Mw to a number average molecular weight (Mn) (Mw/Mn) of not more than 3.0, a flow-out point in a flow tester, of from 75°C to 90°C, a softening point of from 80°C to 110°C, and a glass transition point (Tg) of from 55°C to 65°C and being contained in said binder resin in an amount of not less than 65 wt. % said high-temperature softening resin having a weight average molecular weight (Mw) of 4.0×10^5 to 1.5×10^6 , a ratio of Mw to a number average molecular weight (Mn) (Mw/Mn) of not more than 3.0, a flow-out point in a flow tester, of from 110°C to 160°C, a softening point of from 150°C to 230°C, and a glass transition point (Tg) of not less than 55°C; said low-temperature softening resin and said high-temperature softening resin being in a proportion ranging from 50:50 to 90:10 in weight proportion; and said low-temperature softening resin being obtained by solution polymerization, said high-temperature softening resin being obtained by suspension polymerization, and the both being mixed in a solvent capable of dissolving the both; and said graft-modified polyolefin having a number average molecular weight (Mn) of not more than 1.0×10^3 , a weight average molecular weight (Mw) of not more than 2.5×10^3 , an Mw/Mn of not more than 3.0, and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C.

26. A heat fixing method comprising;

imparting a toner image onto a recording medium, wherein a toner that forms said toner image comprises a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt. % based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight (Mw/Mn)

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





98

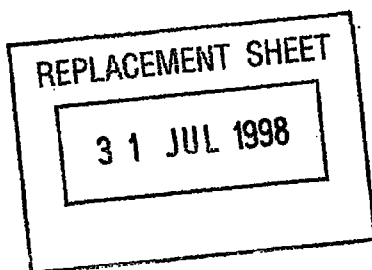
REPLACEMENT SHEET

of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex A corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by Sd; and heat-fixing said toner image to said recording medium by means of a heater element stationarily supported and a pressure member that stands opposite to said heat element in pressure contact and brings said recording medium into close contact with said heater element through a film interposed between them.

27. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element has a temperature of from 100°C to 300°C.
28. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said toner image is heated with a heater element having a temperature of from 100°C to 300°C, through a film having a thickness of from 1 μ m to 100 μ m.
29. A heat fixing method according to claim 26, wherein said film has a heat resistance.
30. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein said film comprises a layer formed of a polymer selected from the group consisting of polyimide, polyester, polyethylene terephthalate, a tetrafluoroethylene-perfluoroalkyl vinyl ether copolymer, polytetrafluoroethylene and polyamide.
31. A heat fixing method according to claim 29, wherein said film comprises a layer formed of a metal.
32. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein

This Sheet Has Been Replaced





said film has at least one of a release layer and a low-resistance layer.

33. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein said film comprises a layer of a polyimide film and a fluorine resin layer.
34. A heat fixing method according to Claim 33, wherein said fluorine resin layer comprises a conductive material dispersed therein.
35. A heat fixing method according to Claim 34, wherein said fluorine resin layer comprises polytetrafluoroethylene.
36. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said film is brought into pressure contact with said heater element by means of said pressure member under a total pressure of from 4 kg to 20 kg.
37. A heat fixing method according to Claim 36, wherein said pressure member is provided with a pressure roller having a rubber elastic layer.
38. A heat fixing method according to Claim 36, wherein said pressure member is provided with a pressure roller having a elastic layer formed of silicone rubber.
39. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element is heated by applying to a resistance material a current with a pulse-like waveform.
40. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element has a low heat capacitance and has a linear structure.
41. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element is provided with a resistance material and a temperature sensor, and when the heater element temperature detected by the temperature sensor is T_1 , the surface temperature T_2 of the film opposed to said resistance material is about 10°C to about 30°C lower than the temperature T_1 and the surface temperature T_3 of the film on the part at which the film is peeled from a fixed toner image is a temperature substantially equal to the temperature T_2 .
42. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein

REPLACEMENT SHEET

31 JUL 1998



100

REPLACEMENT SHEET

said toner comprises the toner according to any one
of Claims 2 to 25.

REPLACEMENT SHEET

31 JUL 1998

- 101 -

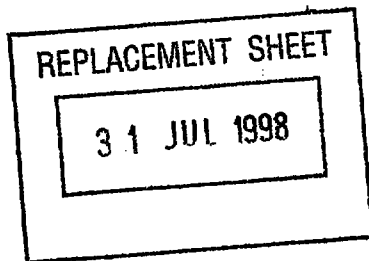
ABSTRACT

REPLACEMENT SHEET

ELECTROSTATIC IMAGE DEVELOPING TONER AND FIXING METHOD

A toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprises a binder resin and a colorant. Such binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak M_A in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak M_B in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum M_d in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that M_B/M_A is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio $S_A:S_B:S_d$ of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8.

Figure 1



9606857-2

IPO's

REPLACEMENT SHEET

- 106 -

ELECTROSTATIC IMAGE DEVELOPING TONER AND FIXING METHOD
ABSTRACT OF THE DISCLOSURE

A toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprises a binder resin and a colorant. Such binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt.% based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\bar{M}_w/\bar{M}_n$) of ≥ 1.8 , a molecular weight peak M_A in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak M_B in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum M_d in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that M_B/M_A is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio $S_A:S_B:S_d$ of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8.

Figure 1

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



REPLACEMENT SHEET

31 JUL 1998

REPLACEMENT SHEET

-3-

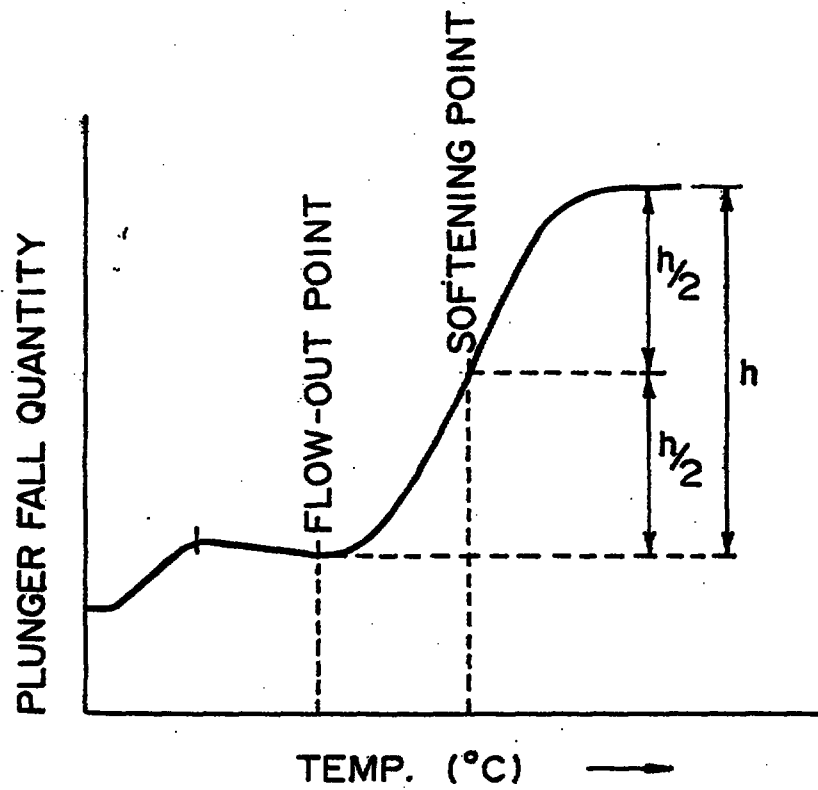


FIG. 4

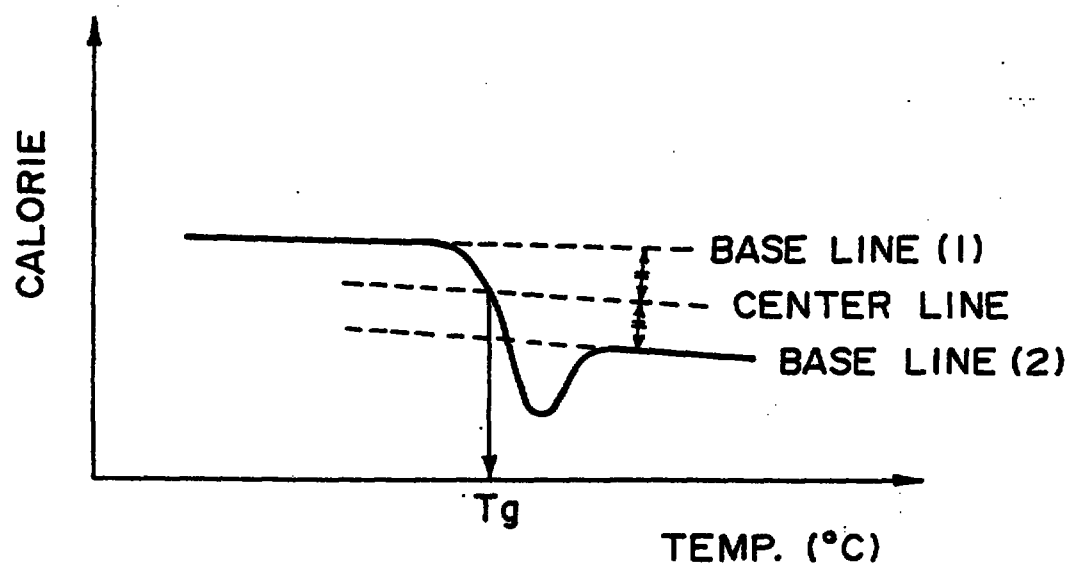
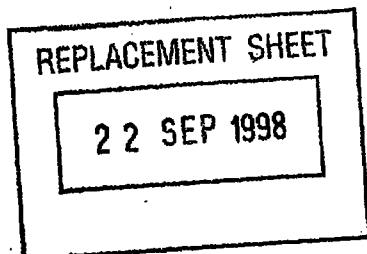


FIG. 5



9606857-2
IPDS

- 31 -

REPLACEMENT SHEET

conditions, of a calibration curve prepared using a polystyrene standard sample and the number of count measured under the above conditions.

The SA, SB and Sd of the molecular weight distribution curve in the binder resin used in the toner of the present invention are determined by calculating the weight ratios of a sample cut out from a chromatogram obtained by GPC and calculating the area ratios thereof.

In the working examples as described later, the molecular weight distribution of the release agent is measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) under the following conditions.

Apparatus: LC-GPC. 150C (Waters Co.)

Column: GMH6 (Toyo Soda Manufacturing Co., Ltd.), 60 cm

Column temperature: 140°C

Solvent: o-dichlorobenzene

The molecular weight distribution possessed by a sample is calculated from the relation between a logarithmic value measured under the above conditions, of a calibration curve of a polyethylene standard and the number of count.

In the present invention, the melting point of the release agent is measured using a differential scanning calorimeter DSC-7 (manufactured by Perkin-

REPLACEMENT SHEET

22 SEP 1998

- 49 -

REPLACEMENT SHEET

fatty acid ester tends to result in a decrease in the releasing effect inherent in the polyolefin. An excessive amount for the aromatic vinyl monomer can not so much bring about an improvement in the dispersibility of the polyolefin in the toner.

The graft-modified polyolefin used in the present invention may preferably be added in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 20 parts by weight, and more preferably from 0.5 part by weight to 10 parts by weight, based on 100 parts by weight of the binder resin. An amount less than 0.1 part by weight makes it difficult to bring about a sufficient releasing effect, and an amount more than 20 parts by weight tends to result in a lowering of the blocking resistance of the toner.

The graft-modified polyolefin used in the present invention may preferably have a melt viscosity in the range of from 1 to 250 CP (centipoise) (1 CP=1 mPa·s) at 160°C. A melt viscosity less than 1 CP tends to cause the blocking of toner. A melt viscosity more than 250 CP makes it hard for the modified polyolefin to bleed from the toner and makes it hard for the releasing effect to be exhibited. In the fixing method of the present invention, it is preferred that in general a releasable component having a lower melt viscosity is used when a lower fixing temperature is

REPLACEMENT SHEET

22 SEP 1998

- 93 -

REPLACEMENT SHEET

As described above, the present invention can achieve a low cost in the operation of copying machines and yet can provide good images, because of the superior low-temperature fixing performance and developing performance of the toner.

REPLACEMENT SHEET

22 SEP 1998

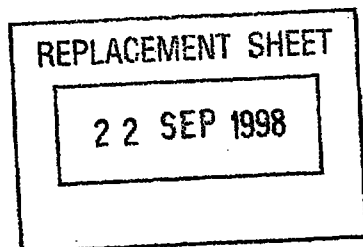
94



REPLACEMENT SHEET

Claims:

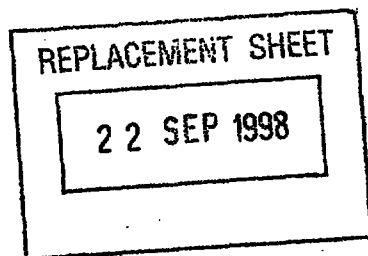
1. A toner for developing an electrostatic image, comprising a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt. % based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight ($\overline{M}_w/\overline{M}_n$) of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex A corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by Sd.
2. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin contains the THF-insoluble matter in an amount of not more than 5 % by weight.
3. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an $\overline{M}_w/\overline{M}_n$ of not less than 20.
4. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an $\overline{M}_w/\overline{M}_n$ of from 25 to 60.
5. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 5,000 to 15,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 450,000 to 900,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 30,000 to 300,000.
6. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an MB/MA of from 30 to 120.



95

REPLACEMENT SHEET

7. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has an MB/MA of from 40 to 100.
8. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak other than the MA, in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000.
9. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight peak other than the MB, in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000.
10. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight minimum other than the Md, in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000.
11. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.7 : 0.4 to 0.7.
12. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin has a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.6 : 0.5 to 0.7.
13. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said binder resin further comprises a release agent.
14. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent is contained in an amount of from 0.1 % by weight to 20 % by weight based on the binder resin.
15. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent is contained in an amount of from 1 % by weight to 10 % by weight based on the binder resin.
16. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent has a number average molecular weight (Mn) of not more than 1,000, a weight average molecular weight (Mw) of not more than 2,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 3, and a melting point of from 60 to 120°C.



17. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 1, wherein said release agent has an Mn of from 400 to 700, an Mw of from 500 to 1,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 2.5, and a melting point of from 60 to 100°C, and is contained in an amount of from 1 % by weight to 10 % by weight based on the binder resin.
18. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent comprises a graft-modified wax, a low-molecular weight polyethylene wax, a low-molecular weight ethylene-propylene copolymer, a low-molecular weight polypropylene wax or a paraffin wax.
19. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 13, wherein said release agent comprises a polyolefin wax graft-modified with an aromatic vinyl monomer, an unsaturated fatty acid or an unsaturated fatty acid ester.
20. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has an Mn of not more than 1,000, an Mw of not more than 2,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 30 and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C.
21. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has an Mn of from more than 400 to 700, an Mw of from 700 to 1,500, an Mw/Mn of not more than 2.0, and a melting point of from 60 to 100°C.
22. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has a graft component in an amount of from 0.1 part by weight to 100 parts by weight based on 100 parts by weight of the polyolefin.
23. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to Claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has a graft component in an amount of from 1 part by weight to 50 parts by weight based on 100 parts by weight of the polyolefin.
24. A toner for developing an electrostatic image according to claim 19, wherein said graft-modified polyolefin wax has melt viscosity of from 1 m Pas (cP) to 250 m Pas (cP) at a temperature of 160°C.
25. A toner for developing an electrostatic image

REPLACEMENT SHEET

22 SEP 1998

97



REPLACEMENT SHEET

according to Claim 1, wherein;

said binder resin contains i) two kinds of styrene-acrylate copolymers, a low-temperature softening resin and a high-temperature softening resin, and ii) a graft-modified polyolefin; said low-temperature softening resin having a weight average molecular weight (M_w) of from 5.0×10^3 to 3.0×10^4 , a ratio of M_w to a number average molecular weight (M_n) (M_w/M_n) of not more than 3.0, a flow-out point in a flow tester, of from 75°C to 90°C , a softening point of from 80°C to 110°C , and a glass transition point (T_g) of from 55°C to 65°C and being contained in said binder resin in an amount of not less than 65 wt. %; said high-temperature softening resin having a weight average molecular weight (M_w) of 4.0×10^3 to 1.5×10^6 , a ratio of M_w to a number average molecular weight (M_n) (M_w/M_n) of not more than 3.0, a flow-out point in a flow tester, of from 110°C to 160°C , a softening point of from 150°C to 230°C , and a glass transition point (T_g) of not less than 55°C ; said low-temperature softening resin and said high-temperature softening resin being in a proportion ranging from 50:50 to 90:10 in weight proportion; and said low-temperature softening resin being obtained by solution polymerization, said high-temperature softening resin being obtained by suspension polymerization, and the both being mixed in a solvent capable of dissolving the both; and said graft-modified polyolefin having a number average molecular weight (M_n) of not more than 1.0×10^3 , a weight average molecular weight (M_w) of not more than 2.5×10^3 , an M_w/M_n of not more than 3.0, and a melting point of from 60°C to 120°C .

26. A heat fixing method comprising;

imparting a toner image onto a recording medium, wherein the toner that forms said toner image comprises a binder resin and a colorant, wherein said binder resin contains a THF-insoluble matter in an amount of less than 10 wt. % based on the binder resin, and, in the molecular weight distribution measured by GPC (gel permeation chromatography) of a THF-soluble matter, has a weight average molecular weight/number average molecular weight (M_w/M_n)

REPLACEMENT SHEET

22 SEP 1998



98

REPLACEMENT SHEET

of ≥ 18 , a molecular weight peak MA in the region of a molecular weight of from 3,000 to 20,000, a molecular weight peak MB in the region of a molecular weight of from 380,000 to 1,000,000, a molecular weight minimum Md in the region of a molecular weight of from 20,000 to 380,000, provided that MB/MA is in the range of from 30 to 150, and a molecular weight distribution curve area ratio SA:SB:Sd of 1 : 0.3 to 0.8 : 0.35 to 0.8 when the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from 400 to the Md is represented by SA, the area of a molecular weight distribution curve of a molecular weight of from the Md to 5,000,000 by SB, and the area of the region defined by a straight line connecting the apex A corresponding to the molecular weight peak MA and the apex B corresponding to the molecular weight peak MB and a molecular weight distribution curve by Sd; and heat-fixing said toner image to said recording medium by means of a heater element stationarily supported and a pressure member that stands opposite to said heat element in pressure contact and brings said recording medium into close contact with said heater element through a film interposed between them.

27. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said heater element has a temperature of from 100°C to 300°C.
28. A heat fixing method according to Claim 26, wherein said toner image is heated with a heater element having a temperature of from 100°C to 300°C, through a film having a thickness of from 1 μ m to 100 μ m.
29. A heat fixing method according to claim 26, wherein said film has a heat resistance.
30. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein said film comprises a layer formed of a polymer selected from the group consisting of polyimide, polyester, polyethylene terephthalate, a tetrafluoroethylene-perfluoroalkyl vinyl ether copolymer, polytetrafluoroethylene and polyamide.
31. A heat fixing method according to claim 29, wherein said film comprises a layer formed of a metal.
32. A heat fixing method according to Claim 29, wherein